

# KATR ELNADA

## CONNECT



# ENGLISH

**5<sup>th</sup>**  
PRIMARY  
SECOND TERM



## Theme 3: My society

Unit 7	Homes in Egypt	5
Unit 8	At the doctor's	39
Unit 9	My favorite animal	83
Review 3	Non-fiction reader: Are There Endangered Animals in Egypt?	118

## Theme 4: Being responsible

Unit 10	Let's visit Egypt	124
Unit 11	Getting out in the fresh air	162
Unit 12	Vacations	191

## Fiction Reader (interactive notebook)

A Fantastic Family Adventure	232
Listening texts	

## Book Reference

عرض المفردات اللغوية مقسمة إلى كلمات رئيسية ومفردات لغوية وصفات وتصريفات الأفعال.

**Main Vocabulary** المفردات الرئيسية

			
living room غرفة معيشة	bedroom غرفة نوم	bathroom حمام	kitchen مطبخ

**Vocabulary** المفردات اللغوية

apartment شقة	space مساحة
------------------	----------------

توضح النقاط العامة بالدروس تحت عنوان (هذا ما تعلم) للاطلاع على أهم النقاط الرئيسية بنصوص الكتاب المدرسي.

3- I go to the dentist when I have .....  
a) cold b) cough c) toothache d) sore throat  
4- My ..... hurts. I have a stomachache.  
a) stomach b) back c) ear d) tooth

**Let's learn** هيا تعلم

- Amr has an earache from swimming.  
عمر لديه ألم في الأذن من السباحة.
- When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home.  
عندما يكون لدينا سعال أو التهاب في الحلق، ينبغي علينا أن نبقى في المنزل.
- When you have a toothache, you should go to the dentist.  
عندما يكون لديك ألم في الأسنان، ينبغي عليك أن تذهب لطبيب الأسنان.

عرض التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر العامة الموجودة في نصوص الكتاب المدرسي.

**Expressions and prepositions** التعبيرات وحروف الجر

next to على اليسار	go down على اليسار	بجوار
on the left على اليمين	for work على اليمين	لأجل العمل
on the right في المنتصف	help with في المنتصف	يساعد في
in the middle يمكن أن تكون	interested in يمكن أن تكون	مهتم به
It could be.... يبحث عن	set out to يبحث عن	يبدأ / يخطط
look for يوجد	go forward يوجد	يذهب للأمام
go back في الإجازة	come toward في الإجازة	يأتي باتجاه
on holiday يكون سعيداً	loved it there يكون سعيداً	أحب المكان هناك
make friend يكون سعيداً	look up يكون سعيداً	ينظر لأعلى

### Language functions

**The past simple** البسيط الماضي

- We use the past simple to express actions that happened once or several times in the past.  
نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أفعال حدثت ذات مرة أو عدة مرات في الماضي.
- Ex: I went to the zoo when I was seven.  
I visited my uncle every summer.
- To express something that was true for some time in the past.  
للتعبير عن شيء كان حقيقياً لفترة في الماضي.
- Ex: He loved living in his grandma's apartment as a child.

**Affirmative form** الشكل التأكيدي

**Regular verbs** الأفعال المنتظمة

توفر ترجمات لكل المحادثات والقطع الموجودة بالكتاب المدرسي بالإضافة إلى نصوص الاستماع.

### Reading: Where does our water come from?

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.

الأمطار تسقط من السحب في السماء. بعض مياه الأمطار تتساقط إلى الأرض. لكن الكثير منها يذهب إلى الجداول والأنهار والبحيرات ثم إلى المحيط. هذه العملية تسمى هطول الأمطار.

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called 'evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back.

تمارين مختلفة على المفردات واللغويات تحت عنوان Check your vocab / language

Yes, I do.  
No, I have a cough.

Ex: - Do you have a cough?  
- Does your shoulder hurt?  
- Yes, I do.  
- Yes, I have a headache.

**Check your language**

**Look and answer.**

What's the matter?  
Does your stomach hurt?



عرض القواعد اللغوية بشرح مبسط مع توفير الأمثلة التوضيحية.

مراجعة على أهم ما ورد في الوحدة من مفردات وقواعد لغوية وتعبيرات هامة.

#### Language focus

##### Expressing ability

Present	Past
<p><b>can + inf</b> (القدرة)</p> <p>Ex: Birds <b>can</b> fly.</p> <p>He <b>can</b> speak French.</p>	<p><b>could + inf</b></p> <p>Ex: I <b>could</b> swim at seven.</p> <p>They <b>could</b> sleep early.</p>
Negative	Negative
<p><b>can't + inf</b></p> <p>Ex: She <b>can't</b> speak German.</p> <p>We <b>can't</b> play tennis.</p>	<p><b>couldn't + inf</b></p> <p>Ex: You <b>couldn't</b> walk.</p> <p>They <b>couldn't</b> catch the bus.</p>
You or No question	السؤال بـ Yes/No

#### Review on unit 7

##### Important vocabulary

livingroom	غرفة معيشة	wooden	خشب	lucky	مطلوقة
bedroom	غرفة نوم	smooth	ناعمة	frightened	خائف
bathroom	حمام	actually	في الواقع	frightening	مخيف
kitchen	مطبخ	landscape	منظر طبيعي	countryside	الريف
cushion	مفكدة	unusual	غير عادي	furniture	أثاث
closet	خزانة	upside down	مقلوب	floor	طابق
elevator	مصعد	suddenly	فجأة	sleeping area	منطقة النوم
mud bricks	طوب آبن	scientist	عالم	cool	بارد

# Unit seven

## المنازل في مصر

## Homes in Egypt

### Did you know?

In Ancient Egypt, mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and vents on the roof let air into the house.

في مصر القديمة، حافظ الطوب اللبن على البرودة داخل المنزل في الطقس الحار. النوافذ الصغيرة وفتحات التهوية في السقف سمحت بدخول الهواء إلى المنزل.

### Exercises

Lesson 1

#### 1 Listen and complete.

- Youssef didn't go to \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- Youssef hurt his \_\_\_\_\_ at football practice.
- Nasser feels \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ahmed is \_\_\_\_\_ about his friends.

#### 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sahar has an headache.</li> <li>When we have a cough.</li> <li>Ouch! My legs.</li> <li>What's _____?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>we should stay home.</li> <li>hurt me.</li> <li>have throat.</li> <li>the matter?</li> <li>I can't talk.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

### General Test on unit 7

#### 1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

- There is a beautiful house in the south of Africa.
- It looks like a nest of bird.
- The house has three bedrooms.
- There is a garden outside with unique plants.

#### 2 Listen and complete.

- Nada shares her room with \_\_\_\_\_.
- On the right, there is \_\_\_\_\_.

القصة المقررة بصور جذابة ومترجمة.

توفير نصوص الاستماع لأسئلة الاستماع التي وردت بالتمارين.



### Listening texts

#### 1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

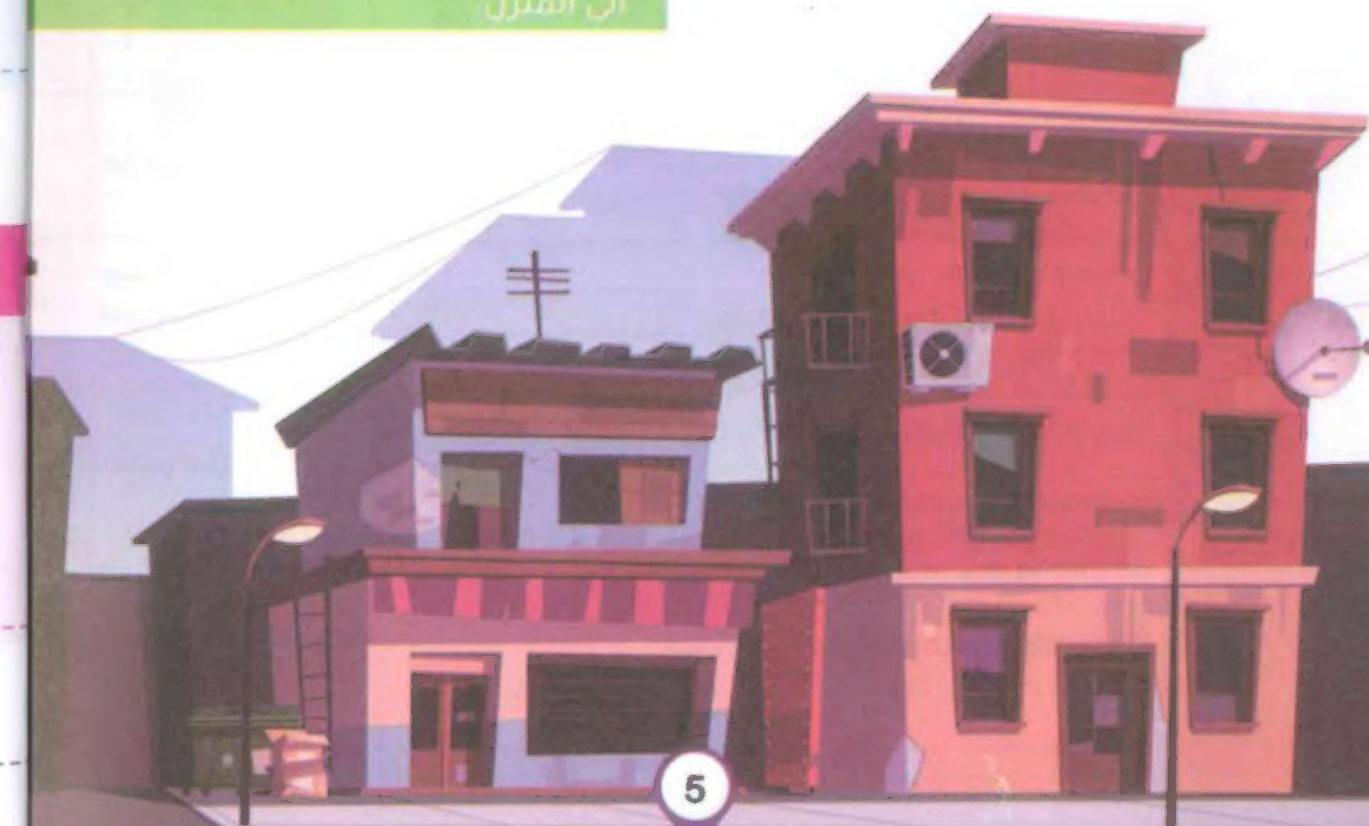
- Listen and complete.
- Where were you yesterday?
- I was at my aunt's apartment. She moved to a new apartment.
- Why?
- Because this apartment has big kitchen which is much bigger to cook in.
- What? What else?
- There are 4 bedrooms, and there is a great view from the balcony.
- That's great!

#### 2 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.  
In Ancient Egypt, boats were the best transportation on the Nile. They were used for traveling and trading. They were made of wood. Most Egyptians had boats.

Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.  
Near a pretty village in the Italian countryside, there is a house with an unusual garden. This garden has a very big space with different and beautiful plants. Inside, there is a big house with six bedrooms, three bathrooms, and 2 kitchens.

Listen and complete.  
Listen: What are you doing, Oth?





## Vocabulary المفردات

armchair	unfriendly	friendly
balcony	uncomfortable	funny
cushion	unlucky	interesting
closet	unsafe	gate
elevator	unhappy	pot
oven	unfair	reed
shower	annoying	roof
television	awesome	rug
bedroom	awful	sleeping area
kitchen	boring	linen
bathroom	brilliant	living room
cool		

## Language اللغويات

## Saying where things are:

on the right/left, in the middle of the room, on the wall.

قول مكان الأشياء:

على اليمين/اليسار، في منتصف الغرفة، على الحائط.

## The negative prefix-un:

unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky.

بادئة النفي

غير ودود، غير مريح، غير محظوظ.

## Past simple affirmative and negative:

I visited her house when I was five.

الماضي البسيط في الاثبات والنفي:

I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.

زرت منزلها عندما كنت في الخامسة من عمري.

لم أعرف إجابة سؤال المعلم.

## Reading القراءة

Story about a dangerous experience in the jungle.

قصة عن تجربة خطيرة في الغابة.

Text about homes in Ancient Egypt.

نص عن المنازل في مصر القديمة.

Blog about unusual homes.

مدونة عن منازل غير عادية.

## Listening الاستماع

Dialog between two friends about living in a new apartment.

حوار بين صديقين حول العيش في شقة جديدة.

## Speaking التحدث

Describing your own home

وصف منزلك الخاص.

Talking about the perfect room.

التحدث عن الغرفة المثالية.

## Writing الكتابة

Blog about unusual homes using a range of adjectives.

مدونة عن المنازل الاستثنائية باستخدام مجموعة من الصفات.

## Phonics الصوتيات

## Correctly pronounce double vowels:

pool, sheep

نطق الحروف المتحركة المزدوجة بشكل صحيح:

## Correctly pronounce oo in words:

/u:/, as in pool, /ʊ/ as in good, /ʌ/, as in blood

نطق "oo" بشكل صحيح في الكلمات:

## Lesson The home

1

البيت

## Main Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



living room

غرفة معيشة



bedroom

غرفة نوم



bathroom

حمام



kitchen

مطبخ



balcony

شرفة / بلكونة



armchair

كرسي ذو ذراعين



cushion

وسادة / مخدة



closet

دولاب



oven

فرن



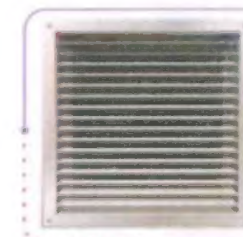
elevator

مصعد



mud brick

طوب لبن



vent

فتحة تهوية

## Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

apartment

شقة

space

مساحة

job

وظيفة

gift

هدية

traditional

تقليدي

view

منظر

closer

أقرب

own

خاص / شخصي

shower

دش

year

عام / سنة



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
move to	ينتقل إلى	moved to		cook	يطهو	cooked	
share	يشارك	shared		prefer	يفضل	preferred	
describe	يصف	described		live	يعيش	lived	

## Irregular verbs

have to	يجب أن	had to	see	يرى	saw
keep	يبقى / يحافظ	kept	let	يسمح / يدع	let

## Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Come in!	أدخل	part of	جزء من
since I was born	منذ وُلِدْتُ	much bigger than	أكبر بكثير من
as you can see	كما ترى	more modern than	أكثر تطور من
welcome to	مرحبًا بك في	What a great view!	يا له من منظر رائع!
for 12 years	لمدة ١٢ عامًا	What's better about...?	ما هو الأفضل في...؟

## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We sleep in the .....  
a) living room    b) bedroom    c) balcony    d) kitchen
- Take the ..... to get to the tenth floor.  
a) oven    b) armchair    c) closet    d) elevator
- Ancient Egyptians used ..... bricks to build houses.  
a) mud    b) metal    c) plastic    d) paper
- The room has a ..... on the roof to let air into it.  
a) door    b) gift    c) vent    d) balcony

Parents' notes

8

Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.

ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

## Reading

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع واقرا ثم تبادل الأدوار

Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

فريدة : أهلاً يا دينا ، مرحباً بك في شقتي الجديدة ادخلي!

Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?

دينا : شكراً! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟

Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

فريدة : أنا أحبها إنها شقة رائعة أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهو أكبر بكثير من شقتنا القديمة.

Dina : How long did you live in your old apartment?

دينا : كم المدة التي عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟

Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

فريدة : اثنا عشر عاماً منذ ولادتي. ثم اضطر والداي للانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة ، لذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.

Dina : So, what's better about this new apartment?

دينا : إذن ، ما هو الأفضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟

Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

فريدة : تعالي وشاهدي. المطبخ الجديد أكبر والفرن أحدث. تقول أمي أنه من الأسهل بكثير الطهي فيه.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room?

دينا : لطيف جداً. وهذه هي غرفة المعيشة؟

Fareeda: Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions.

They were a gift from Grandma.

فريدة : نعم ، كما ترى. هناك مساحة أكبر حتى تتمكن من الحصول على تلفزيون أكبر. انظري إلى هذه الوسائد التقليدية. كانوا هدية من الجدة.

Dina : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

دينا : أوه، نعم! ماذا عن غرف النوم؟

Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

فريدة : لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أشارك غرفة مع أختي أميرة لكن غرفة نومنا كبيرة حقاً. ولدينا حمامان.

Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!

دينا : إنها رائعة الشرفة رائعة أيضاً - يا له من منظر رائع!

KATR ELNADA

9

Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role play with his/her friend.

ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه أو صديقتها.



## Answer the questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة.

- Why did they move to a new apartment?

- What was her grandma's gift?

## Language focus

## Question words

## كلمات الاستفهام

Who...?	أين...؟	Where...?	ما / ماذا...؟	What...?	من...؟
When...?	لماذا...؟	Why...?	كيف...؟	How...?	متى...؟
How long...?				كم المدة...؟	

## How to make a question with question words.

كيفية تكوين سؤال بكلمة استفهام.

## Question word + helping verb + subject + main verb + comp?

? تكلمة الجملة + فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + كلمة استفهام

- How long did you live in Cairo? - For ten years.
- Where do you play? - In the court.

## Exercises

## 1 Listen and complete.

استمع و أكمل.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- Rania visited her aunt .....
- The new apartment has a big ..... which is much easier to cook in.
- There are ..... bedrooms.
- There is a great view from the .....

اقرأ وصل.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- We have a television
- What's better about
- They can see
- The big kitchen
- Look at

- these traditional cushions.
- a great view from the balcony.
- is much easier to cook in.
- They have 3 beds.
- in the living room.
- this new apartment?

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Marwan. My mom and dad got new jobs last month. Their work places are far from our apartment, so we had to move to a closer apartment. In fact, this apartment has many pros than the old one. Firstly, my bedroom is more bigger. Secondly, there is more space in the living room, so we can have a bigger television to enjoy watching movies. Thirdly, my mom is happy with the big kitchen. She can put all the electrical devices in it. Finally, we also have a great view from the balcony. It's an amazing apartment!

## A Choose the correct answer.

- The bedroom is more ..... than the old one.  
a) smaller      b) bigger      c) cleaner      d) happier
- The underlined word "pros" means ..... things.  
a) good      b) bad      c) unsafe      d) noisy

## B Answer the following questions.

- How is the new living room?
- Why is mom happy?

- Help the student to learn the new language.
- Help the student to listen to the dialog and complete the sentences.

- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم المفردات الجديدة.  
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للحوار وتكملة الجمل.

- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement
- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

2- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة  
3- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.



## Unit 7

### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

- 1- moved - to - We - a - apartment - closer .
- 2- long - How - you - did - live - old - your - apartment - in ?
- 3- I - my - sister - share - a - room - with .
- 4- cushions - The - were - a - from - gift - grandma .
- 5- like - you - here - Do - living ?
- 6- has - She - own - her - bedroom .

### 5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

what about the bedrooms

there is an armchair in the bedroom

### 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your new apartment"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "شقتك الجديدة".

- Why did you move to a new apartment?
- What is the difference between the old and the new apartment?

## Lesson 2

## My perfect room

## غرفتي الرائعة

### Vocabulary

desk	مكتب	reason	سبب	dark	ظلام
wall	حائط	morally	أخلاقياً	scientist	عالم
poster	ملصق	street	شارع	villager	قروي
howler monkey	قرد العواء	alone	وحيد/بمفرده	garbage	قمامة
nearby	مجاور	soon	سرعان ما	jungle	غابة
path	ممر/طريق	suddenly	فجأة	sculpture	تمثال
away	بعيداً	airplane	طائرة	case	حقيبة

### Adjectives

local	محلي	dangerous	خطير
deep	عميق	frightened	خائف
younger	أصغر سناً	frightening	مخيف
heavy	غزير/ثقيل	close	قريب
perfect	مثالي / ممتاز		

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
smile	يبتسم	smiled		miss	يفتقد	missed	
die	يموت	died		happen	يحدث	happened	
carry	يحمل	carried		shout	يصيح	shouted	
create	يبتكر/يصنع	created		start	يبدأ	started	

#### Irregular verbs

wear	يرتدى	wore	sit	يجلس	sat
set	يحدد	set	leave	يترك	left
meet	يقابل	met	hear	يسمع	heard

- 1- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.
- 2- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.
- 3- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

- 1- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
- 2- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
- 3- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.

- 1- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.



# Unit 7

## Expressions and prepositions

## التعبيرات وحروف الجر

next to	بجوار	for work	لأجل العمل
It could be....	يمكن أن تكون...	help with	يساعد في
look for	يبحث عن	interested in	مهتم بـ
go back	يعود	set out to	يبدأ / ينطلق
on holiday	في الإجازة	go forward	يذهب للأمام
make friends	يكون أصدقاء	come toward	يأتي باتجاه
loved it there	أحب المكان هناك	look up	ينظر لأعلى

## Language focus

un + صفة - not

adjective		un + adjective	
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد

## Check your language

### Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- 1- Something that doesn't feel nice to sit on. (uncomfortable)
- 2- Something bad happens to you without a reason. ( )
- 3- Not kind to someone. ( )
- 4- dangerous ( )
- 5- sad ( )
- 6- something that happens that isn't morally right or fair. ( )

## Reading

## My perfect room

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

أنا أحب غرفة نومي. أشاركها مع أختي. على اليمين، يوجد سريري مع مكتب بجانبه. على اليسار، يوجد سرير أختي. في منتصف الغرفة، يوجد كرسي بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. على الحائط، يوجد الكثير من الملصقات عن الحيوانات.

## Language focus

### Telling where things are:

### الخبار عن مكان الأشياء:

- عند وصف مكان الأشياء في مكان ما نستخدم العبارات الآتية.

on the right / على اليمين / on the left / على اليسار

on the wall / على الحائط / in the middle of / في منتصف

Ex- On the left, there is a closet.

- There are posters on the wall.
- In the middle of the garden, there's a big tree.

## Check your language

### Choose the correct answer.

- 1- ..... the right, there is my bedroom.  
a) On b) In c) At d) Of
- 2- ..... the middle of the room, there is a desk.  
a) On b) In c) At d) Of



## Reading: story

استمع واقرأ.

## - Listen and read.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!



عمي عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر سنًا، سافر كثيرًا في أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله. ثم، منذ حوالي ثلاث سنوات، حدث له شيء مخيف وكان محظوظًا لأنه عاش ليخبرني بذلك!

He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

كان مهتمًا جدًا بقردة العواء وأراد إجراء بعض الأبحاث عن مجموعات عائلاتهم. أخبره أحد القرويين المحليين بمكان وجود عائلة قرود العواء في مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًا. لكن القروي قال أيضًا، "غداً، ستهطل أمطار غزيرة، لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

انطلق عمي للبحث عن عائلة قرود العواء وسرعان ما كان في أعماق الغابة. استطاع سماع القروء ونظر إلى الأعلى. عرف أنه قريب جدًا منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطار غزيرة جدًا. سرعان ما كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدمًا أو العودة للخلف. فجأة، الكثير من الماء جاء نحوه وحمله بعيدًا إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًا.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

فجأة، رأى يدًا وكان شخص ما يصرخ. كان القروي. مسك يد عمي. وقال: "الآن أنت بأمان!" كان عمي سعيدًا جدًا بالفعل!

## Answer the following questions.

اجب على الأسئلة التالية.

- 1- Who saved his uncle? .....
- 2- Was his uncle lucky or unlucky? Why? .....

## Language focus

## The past simple الماضي البسيط

- We use the past simple to express actions that happened once or several times in the past.

- نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث حدثت مرة أو عدة مرات في الماضي.

Ex: I **went** to the zoo when I **was** seven.  
I visited my uncle every summer.

- To express something that was true for some time in the past.

- للتعبير عن شيء كان حقيقة لفترة في الماضي.

Ex: He loved living in his grandma's apartment as a child.

## Affirmative form الإثبات

## Regular verbs

## الأفعال المنتظمة

- Regular verbs in the past are formed by adding (d/ed/ied) to the verb.

- تتكون الأفعال المنتظمة في الماضي بإضافة (d) أو (ed) أو (ied).

like → liked

watch → watched

study → studied

carry → carried

Ex: We **studied** our lessons.

- We **helped** our teachers.

## Irregular verbs

## الأفعال الغير منتظمة

- Irregular verbs don't have rules and we have to learn them.

- الأفعال الغير منتظمة ليس لها قواعد ويجب أن نتعلمهم.

go → went

buy → bought

eat → ate

Ex: He **saw** someone in the garden.

- They **went** to the school early.

## Negative form النفي

- To make the negative we use (didn't) followed by the infinitive.

- لعمل جملة منفية نستخدم الفعل المساعد (didn't) متبوعًا بمصدر الفعل.

(subject (فاعل) + did not (didn't) + infinitive (مصدر الفعل))

Ex: I **didn't** travel with my friends.

- She **didn't** wear her new dress.



## Check your Language

## Read and correct.

اقرأ وصحح.

- 1- We go to the zoo last week. ( )
- 2- She didn't liked the jungle. ( )
- 3- They come to visit us yesterday. ( )
- 4- I lived in a village when I am a child. ( )

## Exercises

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Ali shares the bedroom with his sister. ☐
- 2- On the right, there's a bed next to a big closet. ☐
- 3- On the left, there's a desk and two armchairs. ☐
- 4- On the wall, there are lots of posters of famous footballers. ☐

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

- 1- Unfair
- 2- In the middle of the room,
- 3- Her dog died last week, so
- 4- Unfriendly
- 5- I visited her house

- a- there is an armchair with two cushions.
- b- when I was six.
- c- unlucky.
- d- something that happens that isn't morally right or fair.
- e- not kind to someone.
- f- she was very unhappy.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

My dad is a scientist and loves plants. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in desert for work. He loved it because the Bedouin people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about five years ago, something frightening happened to him. He was very interested in acacia and wanted to do some research on it, so my dad set out to look for this plant and soon he was deep in the desert. There was a sand storm. He couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, a bedouin person helped him, so he left safe and finished his research.

## A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- My dad is a/an ..... and loves plants.  
a) scientist      b) vet      c) teacher      d) doctor
- 2- The opposite of the word "safe" is .....  
a) unhappy      b) unfair      c) unsafe      d) unfriendly

## B Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why did his dad love to work in the desert?
- 4- What happened when he was deep in the desert?

## 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

- 1- met - I - him - Cairo - in - years - three - ago .
- 2- She - school - late - came - Monday - last - to .
- 3- went - Aswan - to - My - last - grandma - year .
- 4- He - know - didn't - answer - the - to - teacher's question .

## 5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

he traveled all over egypt.

it rained yesterday



# Lesson 3

## Ancient Egyptian homes

بيوت المصريين القدماء

# Lesson 3

## Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

help + inf	يساعد	just like	تمامًا مثل
the same as	نفس	were like	كانت تشبه
all right	بخير	not many people	ليس العديد من الناس

## Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

mud	طين	furniture	أثاث
pot	إبريق	like	مثل
today	اليوم	floor	طابق
roof	سطح	reed mat	حصيرة
countryside	الريف	often	غالبًا
papyrus	البردي	bank	ضفة
gate	بوابة	sleeping area	مكان النوم
style	طراز	washing	الغسيل
cooking	الطبخ / الطهي	drinking	الشرب

## Adjectives

cool	بارد / لطيف	cooler	أبرد	the coolest	الأبرد
wooden	خشبي	large	كبير	special	خاص / مميز

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

Present	ماضي	Present	ماضي
use	يستخدم / استخدم	used	استخدم
wash	يغسل	washed	غسل
cover	يغطي	covered	غطى
save	يوفر	saved	وفر
paint	يدهن	paint	دهن
relax	يسترخي	relax	سترخي
store	يخزن	store	خزن
join	يرتبط / يتجمع	joined	ارتبط / تجمعت

### Irregular verbs

build	يبني	built	بنى	sleep	ينام	slept	نام
make	يصنع	made	صنع	blow	ينهب	blew	نهب
drink	يشرب	drank	شرب	fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	سقط

## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- In the past, people used ..... mats to sit on.  
a) reed      b) wooden      c) metal      d) mud
- I live in the third .....  
a) roof      b) pot      c) floor      d) gate
- My mother uses a basket to ..... vegetables.  
a) join      b) store      c) relax      d) pain
- The mud bricks helped ..... homes cool.  
a) keep      b) keeps      c) kept      d) keeping

## Reading : Ancient Egyptian homes

### - Listen and read.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.



في مصر القديمة . بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل . واستخدموا مياهه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل . كما استخدموا الطين من النهر في صنع الطوب لمنازلهم . الطوب اللبن صنع جدران قوية.

Parents' notes

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتكرارها.

Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.  
Help the student to listen to the text and read it.

KATR ELHADDA  
ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.  
ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وقراءته.



Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم ، وقد ساعد الطوب اللبن في ذلك . قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة . كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية . والتي كانت أبرد جزء من المنزل . غالبًا ما قامت العائلات بالطهي والأكل والاسترخاء والنوم هناك في الليالي الحارة .

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.



This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن اليوم . كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها ، استخدموا أوراق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب ، وهذا أبقى الحشرات في الخارج . في كل منزل ، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس . لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كرسي .

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

في المدن ، كان الناس يعيشون قريبًا جدًا من بعضهم البعض ، ولذلك بنوا منازلهم أطول ذات طابقين . هذا وفر المساحة حتى يتمكنوا من بناء المزيد من المنازل . تجمعت منازل المدينة معًا ، تمامًا كما هو الحال اليوم ، في الريف ، كانت المنازل عادة بها طابق واحد فقط ، كما كانت بها حديقة أيضًا . كانوا يزرعون الخضروات ويبيعون الدجاج هناك .

### Answer the questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- How was the Nile important in Ancient Egypt?

2- What materials did they use in their homes?

### Read and listen to the poem.

اقرأ واستمع للقصة.

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,  
Egyptian houses had a special style:  
Dark inside with small windows,  
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,  
Outside under the stars at night,  
One family together, feeling all right.  
Mud from the Nile made their walls  
Safe and strong, and never to fall.



على ضفاف نهر النيل القديم . كان للمنازل المصرية طراز خاص : ظلام من الداخل مع نوافذ صغيرة ، وحصائر على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة ، في الخارج تحت النجوم ليلاً ، عائلة واحدة معًا ، تشعر بأنها على ما يرام . جعل الطين من النيل جدرانهم آمنة وقوية ، ولا تسقط أبدًا .

## Exercises

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع و اكتب (صح) أو (خطأ)  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Buses were the best transportation. ☐
- 2- They used boats for trading. ☐
- 3- The boats were made of wood. ☐
- 4- No one in Egypt had a boat. ☐

### 2 Listen and complete.

استمع و أكمل.

- 1- Ancient Egyptians used ..... to keep their homes cool.
- 2- They painted their homes ..... to make them cooler.
- 3- There were ..... to sit and sleep on.
- 4- They used ..... to cover the windows and doors.







# Lesson 4

## A: Pronunciation

النطق

- Long vowels sounds with double vowels.

- الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة مع الحروف المتحركة المزدوجة.

- You can pronounce "ee" "oo" as a longer sound like:

ee /i:/

thr <u>ee</u>	ثلاثة
ch <u>ee</u> se	جبنه
qu <u>ee</u> n	ملكة
sh <u>ee</u> p	خروف
tr <u>ee</u>	شجرة
k <u>ee</u> p	يحافظ
s <u>ee</u> d	بذرة

oo /u:/

sch <u>oo</u> l	مدرسة	sm <u>oo</u> th	ناعم
p <u>oo</u> l	حمام سباحة	to <u>o</u> l	أداة
r <u>oo</u> f	سطح	fo <u>o</u> d	طعام
sp <u>oo</u> n	ملعقة	no <u>o</u> n	ظهيرة
z <u>oo</u>	حديقة حيوان		

- You can pronounce "oo" as a shorter sound like:

oo /ʊ/

g <u>oo</u> d	جيد
b <u>oo</u> k	كتاب
w <u>oo</u> d	خشب
co <u>o</u> k	يطهو

oo /ʊ/

bl <u>oo</u> d	دم
fl <u>oo</u> d	فيضان

## Exercises

1 Write the missing letters of the double vowels (ee - oo).

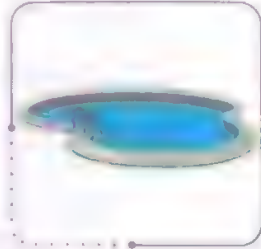
اكتب الحروف الناقصة للأصوات المتحركة المزدوجة.



sch   l



z   



p   l

# Lesson 4



ch   se



tr   



sh   p

2 Look, circle and write.

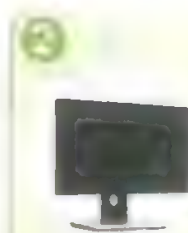
انظر وضع دائرة ثم اكتب.



sp   n

ee

oo



scr   n

ee

oo



qu   n

ee

oo



f   d

ee

oo

3 Read. Put the oo words in the correct column in the table.

Then listen and check. اقرأ وضع الكلمات في العمود الصحيح ثم استمع وتحقق.

school - book - flood - smooth - cook - blood

food - zoo - wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood

Parents' notes

26

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.  
Help the student to look at the pictures and write the missing vowels.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتكرارها.  
- ساعد التلميذ في النظر للصورة وكتابة الحروف المتحركة الناقصة.

Help the student to look at the pictures, circle the vowels and write them.

Help the student to put the words in the correct category.

KATR ELMADA

- ساعد التلميذ في النظر للصورة ووضع دائرة حول الحروف المتحركة الناقصة وكتابتها.  
- ساعد التلميذ في وضع الكلمات في الفئة الصحيحة.

27



## Decimals

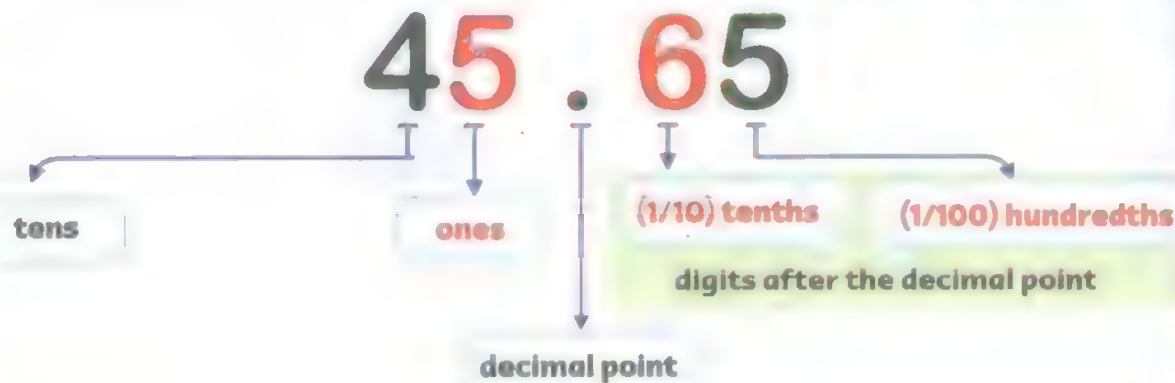
## الأعداد العشرية

Decimals are one of the types of numbers, which has a whole number and the fractional part separated by a decimal point.

- الأعداد العشرية هي أحد أنواع الأعداد التي تحتوي على عدد صحيح وجزء كسري مفصلاً باستخدام الفاصلة العشرية.

- Look at the information below about the number (45.65).

انظر إلى المعلومات بالأسفل حول الرقم (45.65).

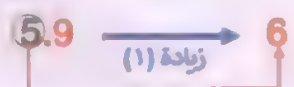


## How can we round decimal number? كيف نقرب العدد العشري؟

- We can round the number after the decimal point to the nearest whole number. It makes the numbers shorter and easier to use.  
- يمكننا تقريب الرقم بعد الفاصلة العشرية إلى أقرب عدد صحيح مما يجعل الأرقام مختصرة وسهلة في الاستخدام.

If the digit in the tenths **5 or more**, then we'll round **up** to the nearest whole number:

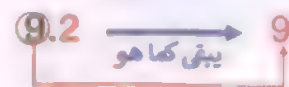
في أي رقم إذا كان في خانة الجزء من عشرة (خمسة أو أكثر) نقوم بزيادة هذا الرقم لأقرب عدد صحيح.



$$14.95 \rightarrow 15$$

If the digit in the tenths is **less than 5**, then we round **down** to the nearest whole number:

في أي رقم إذا كان في خانة الجزء من عشرة (أقل من خمسة) يبقى هذا الرقم الصحيح كما هو.



$$49.4 \rightarrow 49$$

## Exercises

## 1 Round the decimal numbers to the nearest whole number.

قرب الأعداد العشرية لأقرب عدد صحيح.

$$1 - 57.87 \rightarrow \dots \quad 2 - 267.56 \rightarrow \dots$$

$$3 - 545.98 \rightarrow \dots \quad 4 - 48.3 \rightarrow \dots$$

$$5 - 96.3 \rightarrow \dots \quad 6 - 48.97 \rightarrow \dots$$

## 2 Match each number to its nearest whole.

صل كل رقم بأقرب عدد صحيح.

3.9

35

5.5

4

35.1

6

59.6

60

13.95

14

169.3

169

## 3 Read and complete.

اقرأ واكمل.

$$1 - 134.3 \text{ becomes } \dots$$

$$2 - 223.9 \text{ becomes } \dots$$



# Lessons 5,6

## Unusual homes

## بيوت استثنائية

### Vocabulary

blog	مدونة إلكترونية	farmhouse	منزل ريفي
week	أسبوع	landscape	منظر طبيعي
topic	موضوع	farm	مزرعة
architect	مهندس معماري	field	حقل
actually	في الواقع	opinion	رأي
reader	قارئ	movie	فيلم
spelling	هجاء	living things	الكائنات الحية
movie theatre	سينما	Netherlands	هولندا

### Adjectives

ecological	بيئي	awful	فظيع / مخيف
unusual	غير عادي / استثنائي	positive	إيجابي
brilliant	مذهل / بارع	negative	سلبي
upside down	مقلوب	annoying	مزعج
awesome	رائع	boring	ممل
funny	ممتع / مضحك	correct	صحيح

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	ماضٍ	Present	ماضٍ
blog	يُدون	change	يُغير
research	يُبحث	fit	يُناسب
heat	يُسخن	enjoy	يُستمتع بـ
invite	يُدعو	arrive	يُصل

#### Irregular verbs

write	يُكتب	wrote	يأخذ	took
find	يُجد	found	يُحصل على	got
speak	يُتحدث	spoke		

Parents' notes

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتدريبها.

# Lessons 5,6

## Expressions and prepositions

## التعبيرات وحروف الجر

for me	من أجلي / لي	on time	في الوقت المحدد
fit in very well	مناسب تمامًا	related to	مرتبط بـ
give opinion	يعطي رأي	on the outside	من الخارج
ecologically friendly	صديق للبيئة	at the top	في القمة
make energy	يولد طاقة	That's so cool!	هذا لطيف جدًا!

### Let's learn

### هيا نتعلم

**blogging:** to write about something in an online blog.

**التدوين الإلكتروني:** أن تكتب عن شيء ما في مدونة إلكترونية (على الإنترنت).

**ecological:** related to living things and their environments.

**بيئي:** مرتبط بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتهم.

## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- This movie isn't interesting. It's .....  
a) funny      b) brilliant      c) boring      d) good
- He is very clever. He always arrives at school ..... time.  
a) on      b) at      c) to      d) of
- I didn't see anything like that. It's .....  
a) usual      b) negative      c) positive      d) unusual

## Writing a blog

## كتابة مدونة

### Tip

- Write about something you like and enjoy.
- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like 'awesome' and 'cool'.
- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 😊 😄 😍
- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
- Check that your spelling is correct.

Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.

KATR ELNADA

ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.

اكتب لقراءتك كما لو كنت تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات مثل (I'm, it's) وكلمات مثل 'رائع' و 'لطيف'.  
اكتب علامات التعجب (!) والرموز التعبيرية. شارك برأيك وادع القراء لإبداء آرائهم. - تحقق أن يكون هجاءك صحيحًا.



## - Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

## Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

Wednesday, 8<sup>th</sup> November

أهلاً اسمي داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة. أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع شيق جداً بالنسبة لي لأن والدتي مهندسة معمارية. لذلك تأخذني أحياناً لرؤية بعض الأماكن المذهلة. إنه شيئاً رائع حقاً!

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😊  
What do you think of it? Do you like it?

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الاستثنائي في هولندا على الإنترنت - إنه بالمقلوب! إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم والذي يغيره الناس لجعله حديث. هذا يعمل بشكل جيد جداً لأن جميع النوافذ في الأعلى، لذلك تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. السكان المحليين يحبون ذلك لأنه يتناسب بشكل جيد مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية. حيث توجد المزارع و الحقول. كما أنه أيضاً صديق للبيئة لأنهم يستخدموا الهواء والماء و الشمس لتسخين وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. ذاك لطيف جداً!  
ما رأيك فيه؟ هل أحببته؟

## Answer the questions.

اجب عن الأسئلة.

1- What was unusual about the house in the Netherlands?

2- Why is it very ecological?

## 1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1- There is a house with an unusual garden in Paris.
- 2- This garden has a very big space with beautiful plants.
- 3- There are 12 bedrooms.
- 4- There are 2 kitchens.

## 2 Listen and complete.

ستمع وأكمل.

- 1- Ola is writing a .....
- 2- She found a strange ..... in South Africa.  
The house looks like a .....
- 4- It ..... everything like a normal house.

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ واصل.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 What does the home   | a - related to living things.              |
| 2 Yesterday, my cousin | b - dangerous.                             |
| 3 Unsafe means         | c - to research on Ancient Egyptian homes. |
| 4 You are going        | d - That's funny.                          |
| 5 Ecological           | e - came to visit us.                      |
|                        | f - look like on the outside?              |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, my name's Mona and I like blogging about unusual homes. When we visit my cousins in the countryside, we see a very unusual house. It's quite big and very beautiful, but the different thing about it is that it has got grass on the roof. It looks like a garden at the top of the house, so they can grow many plants and make nice decorations. What a nice home!



## Unit 7

### A Choose the correct answer.

- The main idea of the text is unusual .....  
a) towns      b) homes      c) cities      d) places
- The opposite of the word "unusual" is .....  
a) usual      b) fair      c) different      d) lucky

### B Answer the following questions.

3- What does Mona like?

4- What does the house have?

### C Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- go - didn't - live - beach - the - Sunday - on - to .
- fits - well - in - very - it - landscape - with - the - local .
- She - next - her - friend - best - to - sat .
- actually - old - it - an - is - farmhouse .

### D Punctuate the following.

The house is in france

what do you think of it

### E Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your house"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "منزلك".

- Where is it?

- What does it look like?

## Review on unit 7

### Important vocabulary

living room	غرفة معيشة	wooden	خشبي	lucky	مستحسن
bedroom	غرفة نوم	smooth	ناعم	frightened	مخوف
bathroom	حمام	actually	في الواقع	frightening	مخيف
kitchen	مطبخ	landscape	منظر طبيعي	countryside	ريف
cellar	خزانة	unusual	غير اعتاد	furniture	أثاث
closet	خزانة	upside down	مقلوب	floor	سجادة
elevator	مصعد	suddenly	فجأة	sleeping area	منطقة النوم
mud bricks	طوب لينة	scientist	عالم	cool	بارد
argument	شجار	villager	فرد من	blog	موقع
view	منظر	jungle	غابة	farmhouse	منزل ريفي
pill	مسكن	comfortable	مريح	ecological	بيئي
nearby	بالقرب	fair	عادل	brilliant	مذهل / رائع
reed mat	حصيرة	safe	آمن	heavy	ثقيل / غزير
roof	سطح				

### Verbs

#### Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
keep	يحفظ	kept		leave	يترك	left	
let	يدع	let		meet	يقابل	met	
build	يبني	built		make	يصنع	made	
find	يجد	found		speak	يتحدث	spoke	
take	ياخذ	took		write	يكتب	wrote	

- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.
- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.
- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

- ساعد الطالب في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
- ساعد الطالب في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
- ساعد الطالب في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.



## Unit 7

### Language

#### Verb Tenses

- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهى.

- يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة ( **ied / ed / d** ) للفعل المنتظم أما الفعل العير منتظم يحفظ كما هو.

move → moved    watch → watched    carry → carried  
see → saw    get → got    hear → heard

- We **enjoyed** our trip.

I **took** a taxi yesterday.

#### Negative النفي

(مصدر الفعل) + didn't + infinitive

- They **didn't** go deep in the jungle.
- He **didn't** come to the party.

## General Test on unit 7

### 1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

بص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- There is a beautiful house in the south of Africa.
- 2- It looks like a nest of bird.
- 3- The house has three bedrooms.
- 4- There is a garden outside with beautiful plants.

### 2 Listen and complete.

- 1- Nada shares her room with .....
- 2- On the right, there is .....

## Review

- 3- On the left, there is Nada's bed with a ..... next to it.
- 4- On the wall, there are lots of ..... fashion designers.

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B)

1- Uncomfortable

2- My uncle is a scientist

3- What does the home look like

4- The people

5- Ancient Egyptians used papyrus

a- to cover the windows and doors.

b- on the inside?

c- helped him with his work.

d- unhappy.

e- and he loves animals.

f- something that doesn't feel nice to wear on your body.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

All around the world, people live in different types of homes. Many people live in apartment buildings reaching high into the sky. In Spain, many people live in villas with big swimming pools. Inuit people live in igloos. Igloos are made of huge blocks of ice. In some hot countries, people live in huts or tents with no windows or doors. They are made of mud, straw and leaves.

### A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about different types of .....  
a) homes    b) places    c) parks    d) rooms
- 2- Inuit people live in .....  
a) zoos    b) deserts    c) igloos    d) tents



## Unit 7

**B** Answer the following questions.

3- Where do many people live in Spain?

What are igloos made of?

**5** Reorder the words to make correct sentences

1- him - met - He - Cairo - in - five - ago - years .

2- Ancient - How - did - Egyptians - make - homes - their ?

3- Anna - eat - dinner - her - didn't .

4- Mom - his - didn't - homework - help - him - with .

**6** Punctuate the following.

it s very uncomfortable

what about the kitchen

**7** Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your new bedroom"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "غرفة نومك الجديدة".

( in the middle - posters )

## Unit eight

في عيادة  
الطبيب

### At the doctor's

#### Did you know?

In ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine to help sick people.

في مصر القديمة، كان الأطباء يستخدمون العسل كدواء لمساعدة المرضى.





## Vocabulary

ankle	back	unwell	treatment
cold	cough	relative	wound
earache	headache	crowded	bacteria
shoulder	sore throat	staff	infect
stomachache	toothache	injection	heal
glacier	lake	corridor	scissors
ocean	river	helpful	insect bite
stream	bathwater	hospital	cream
drinking water	fresh water	patient	cleansing wipe
salt	salt water	bandage	medical gloves
blind	flexible	sunscreen	rubber band
trunk	spear	honey and lemon	safety pin
tusk	rope	pill	cut knee
soap	sunburn		

## Language

Using (have to) talk about illness, i.e. I have a headache.

Do you have an earache?

Asking about illness, i.e.

What's the matter?

Where does it hurt?

**Negative prefixes**, i.e. un- (usual), ir- (responsible), il- (legal),

- (possible)

## Reading

Story about listening to other people's opinions.

Text about a hospital in India.

Text about the health benefits of honey.

Presentation about staying healthy.

## Listening

Dialog between mom and son about feeling unwell.

Dialog between doctor and patient.

## Speaking

Talking about illness.

## Writing

A short paragraph about staying healthy.

Lesson  
1

## They didn't come to the club!

لم يأتوا إلى النادي

## Main Vocabulary



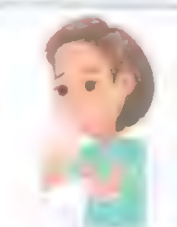
earache  
ألم في الأذن



toothache  
ألم في الأسنان



sore throat  
تهاب في الحلق



cold  
برد



headache  
صداع



cough  
كحة / سعال



stomachache  
ألم في المعدة



backache  
ألم في الظهر

## Vocabulary

club

swimming

coach

ankle

dentist

stomach

football practice

doctor

careful

shoulder

honey

back

## Conjugation of verbs

## Irregular verbs

hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt	say	يقول	said
have/ has	عنده - لديه	had	tell	يخبر	told
go	يذهب	went			



## Expressions and prepositions

## التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Not really	ليس حقا / ليس كثيرا	feel better	شعر بتحسن
I hope so, too!	أشعر بالمثل أيضا	have problems	لديهم مشاكل
Are they OK?	هل هم بخير؟	worried about	قلق بشأن
Ouch!	أوه! (ألم بعد فعل شيء)	stay home	ابق في المنزل
What's the matter?			ما الأمر؟
have a good day			أتمنى يوم جيد لك

## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Amr has a / an ..... from swimming. His ear hurts.  
a) backache      b) toothache      c) earache      d) cold
- The ..... told us to be careful at football practice.  
a) doctor      b) coach      c) dentist      d) teacher
- I go to the dentist when I have .....  
a) cold      b) cough      c) toothache      d) sore throat
- My ..... hurts. I have a stomachache.  
a) stomach      b) back      c) ear      d) tooth

## Let's learn

## لن نتعلم

- Amr has an earache from swimming.  
- عمرو لديه ألم في الأذن من السباحة.
- When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home.  
- عندما يكون عندنا كحة أو التهاب في الحلق، ينبغي علينا أن نبقى في المنزل.
- When you have a toothache, you should go to the dentist.  
- عندما يكون عندك ألم في الأسنان، ينبغي عليك أن تذهب لطبيب الأسنان.

## Dialog

## Reading: How does Fares feel today?

Listen, read and role-play.

Mom: Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

Fares: Not really. Only five people came to the club today!

Mom: Oh no! Are they OK?

Fares: No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

فارس: لا، لديهم مشاكل. صديقي طارق أصيب في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية. و عمرو لديه ألم في الأذن من السباحة.

Mom: What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.

Fares: No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

فارس: لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. اثنان من أصدقائي عندهم برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين عندما نكسح ونسعل أو التهاب الحلق. ينبغي أن نبقى في المنزل.

Mom: How do you feel?

Fares: Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

فارس: حسنا، لدي ألم في الظهر وأنا قلق على أصدقائي. أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غدا.

Mom: I hope so, too!

أمم: أتمنى ذلك أيضا.

Listen again and choose the correct answer.

- Fares had a ..... day at the club.  
a) bad      b) good      c) exciting
- Fares thinks Lama went to the .....  
a) doctor      b) dentist      c) vet
- Fares's ..... hurts.  
a) leg      b) head      c) back



## Asking and answering about illness / health

السؤال و الإجابة عن مرض / صحة شخصاً ما.

- عند السؤال عن المرض نستخدم:

What's the matter?

ما الأمر / ما المشكلة؟

- عند الإجابة نستخدم:

I have  $\frac{a}{an}$  + المرض.

My + جزء الجسم + hurts.

- What's the matter, Dina?

- I have a headache.

- What's the matter, Wael?

- My tooth hurts.

- عند السؤال بهل عن المرض نستخدم:

Do you have  $\frac{a}{an}$  + المرض?

Does your + جزء الجسم + hurt?

- عند الإجابة نستخدم:

Yes, I do.

No, I have  $\frac{a}{an}$  + المرض.

- Do you have a cough?

- Yes, I do.

- Does your shoulder hurt?

- No, I have a headache.

## Check your language

Look and answer.



What's the matter?



Does your stomach hurt?

## Exercises

Listen and complete.

1- Youssef didn't go to ..... yesterday.

2- Youssef hurt his ..... at football practice.

3- Nour has a .....

4- Ashraf is ..... about his friends.

Read and match (A) with (B).

1 Salma has an earache

2 When we have a cough,

3- Ouch! My legs

4 What's

5- I have a

a we should stay home.

b hurt me.

c- sore throat.

d- the matter?

e I can't talk.

f- from swimming.

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I'm Ahmed. Yesterday was a bad day. I and my brother were at the club. When I was at swimming practice, my ear hurt me. When my brother Ramy was at football practice, he hurt his ankle. When we went home, my mother felt sick. She had a backache. My father didn't feel well. He had a cough. I brought milk and honey for him. My little sister had a cold. After we took the medicines, we felt better.

Choose the correct answer.

1- The underlined word "sick" means .....

a) well

b) healthy

c) fit

d) ill

2- His little sister had a .....

a) cold

b) sore throat

c) backache

d) cough



## Answer the following questions.

3- What happened to Ahmed's father?

4- What's the matter with Ahmed's brother?

## Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- good - a - had - I - day - yesterday .

2- have - a - you - Do - throat - sore ?

3- mother - No - has - my - a - toothache .

4- 'll - they - I - hope - feel better - tomorrow .

## Punctuate the following.

what s the matter?

ouch My shoulder hurts.

## Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your day at school yesterday"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "يومك في المدرسة أمس"

( had - toothache )

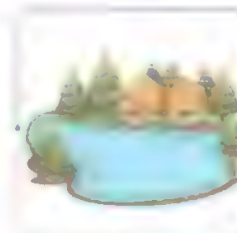
## Main Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية



glacier

جبل جليدي



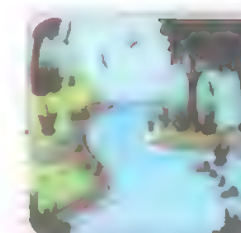
lake

بحيرة



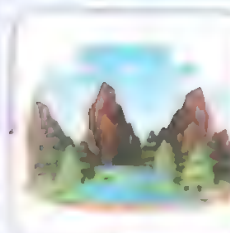
ocean

مياه



river

نهر



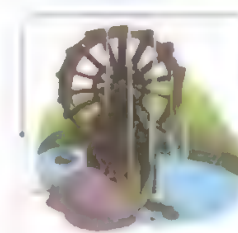
stream

جداول مائي



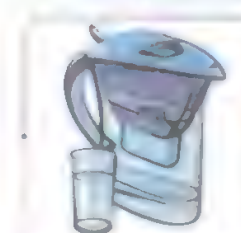
bathwater

ماء الاستحمام



water for crops

مياه للزراعة (الري)



drinking water

ماء الشرب

## Vocabulary

## المفردات اللغوية

salt water = sea water

the Mediterranean Sea

the River Nile

rain

ماء مالح

البحر الأبيض المتوسط

نهر النيل

مطر

the Red Sea

fresh water

salt

البحر الأحمر

ماء عذب

ملح

## Expressions and prepositions

## التعبيرات وحروف الجر

How many ...?

important for

glass of water

a day = every day

كم عدد ...؟

هام ل

كوب من الماء

كل يوم / في اليوم

## Tip

Salt water can also be called sea water. It is the water in seas and oceans.  
الماء المالح يمكن أن يسمى أيضًا بماء البحر. هو الماء الموجود في البحار والمحيطات.



## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

- People can drink water from .....  
a) oceans                      b) rivers                      c) seas
- We should drink 8 glasses of ..... water a day.  
a) fresh                      b) salt                      c) sea
- We can find salt water in .....  
a) drinking water              b) water for crops              c) the Red Sea

## Language functions

- Asking and answering about the number of things.

السؤال والإجابة عن عدد الأشياء.

- السؤال عن العدد نستخدم :

How many + plural noun + .....?

كم عدد              اسم جمع

- وعند الإجابة نستخدم :

Subject + verb + number

الفاعل              الفعل              العدد

Ex. - How many glasses of water do you drink every day?

I drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day.

## Check your language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

- ..... books does she have? - She has 4 books.  
a) How many                      b) How often                      c) How much?
- How many ..... do you have?  
a) brother                      b) brothers                      c) sister

Read and match (A) with (B).

- I drink 8 glasses
- Salt water can be
- We can go fishing
- How many books do
- We can't drink water

- called sea water.
- of fresh water a day.
- you read every week?
- in the lake.
- in the sea.
- water for crops.

Read the text and answer the questions.

Water is an amazing element. Water can be separated into salt water and fresh water. Salt water is 97% of all water and is found mostly in our oceans and seas. Fresh water is found in glaciers, lakes, ponds and rivers. Fresh water is main to life. Fresh water is safe to drink. There are many interesting plants that live in salt water.

Choose the correct answer.

- The main idea is about .....  
a) fresh and salt water                      b) animals  
c) plants                      d) games
- The underlined word "separated" means .....  
a) played                      b) divided                      c) married                      d) joined

Answer the following questions.

- Where can we find fresh water?
- Which water is safe to drink, fresh water or salt water?



## B) Describing the elephant

وصف الفيل

### Main Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

elephant	فيل	tusk	ناب
blind	أعمى / كفيف	spear	رمح
trunk	زبومة الفيل	rope	حبل
back leg	رجل خلفية	stick	عصا

### Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

men	رجال	first	الأول
stories	قصص	second	الثاني
idea	فكرة	third	الثالث
side	جانب	fourth	الرابع
wall	حائط / جدار	fifth	الخامس
tree trunk	جذع شجرة	sixth	السادس
part	جزء	leaf / leaves	ورقة شجر / ورق شجر
moral	معزي / عبرة		

### Adjectives

الصفات

different	مختلف	round	مستدير
enormous	هائل / ضخم	hard	صلب
strong	قوي	smooth	ناعم
pointed	مدهب	flat	مسطح
incredible	لا يصدق / مدهش	clever	ماهر / ذكي
flexible	مرن / لين		

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
ask	يسأل	asked		listen	يستمع	listened	
touch	يلمس	touched		turn to	يتنقذ إلى	turned to	
discover	يكشف	discovered		describe	يصف	described	

## Lesson 2

### Irregular verbs

find out	يكشف	found out	think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought
----------	------	-----------	-------	--------------	---------

### Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل	look like	يشبه
along the road	على طول الطريق	would like to	يوافق
walked over to	مشى لجهة	You're wrong!	أنت على خطأ
You're all correct	جميعكم على صواب	for a moment	للمضة
on the beach	على الشاطئ	on his farm	في مزرعته
shaped like a leaf	على شكل ورقة شجر	reached out	مد يده

### Check your vocab

Match the words to their correct meaning.

- |         |                                     |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 tusk  | a can't see                         |
| 2 spear | b the very long nose of an elephant |
| 3 blind | c a long pointed stick              |
| 4 trunk | d a very long pointed tooth         |

### Reading:

Read and listen to the story.

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different idea about what the elephant would look like.

منذ زمن بعيد، كان هناك ستة رجال عميون أرادوا أن يلتقوا بفيل. لقد سمعوا الكثير من القصص عن هذه الحيوانات المدهشة، لكن كل رجل كان لديه فكرة مختلفة عن شكل الفيل.



One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.



يومًا ما ، كان مزارع محلي يسير على طول الطريق مع فيل يعمل في مزرعته ، فسأل المزارع إذا ما كان الرجال يرغبون في لمس الفيل لكي يكتشفوا كيف يبدو . كان الرجال متحمسين جدًا وساروا تجاه الحيوان الضخم

The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, 'It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!'

لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل . قال ، ' إنه طويل جدًا وقوي جدًا ، إنه يشبه الجدار '

The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, 'No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!'

وضع الرجل الثاني ذراعيه حول ساق الفيل الخلفية . قال : ' لا ، أنت مخطئ! إنه مستدير وقوي ، مثل جذع شجرة '

When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, 'You're both wrong! The elephant is long and flexible ...it's just like a snake!'

عندما وضع الرجل الثالث يده على رلومة الفيل ، قال : ' كلاكما مخطئ! الفيل طويل ومرن ... إنه فقط مثل الثعبان '

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's tusk. He said, 'It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear!'

وضع الرجل الرابع أصابعه على ناب الفيل . قال : إنه صلب وطويل وناعم . اعتقد أنه خطير كالرمح

The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, 'This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!'

كان الرجل الخامس طويلًا جدًا جدًا . مد يده ولمس أذن الفيل . قال : هذا الفيل ناعم ومسطح ، وشكله مثل ورقة الشجر

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, 'This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope!'

أخيرًا ، وضع الرجل السادس يده على ذيل الفيل . قال ' هذا الفيل ليس مثل الجدار ، أو الرمح ، أو الثعبان . إنه ليس مثل ورقة شجر أو جذع شجرة! هذا الفيل يشبه الحبل '

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, 'In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like.'

استمع المزارع إلى كل ما قاله الرجال . التفت إليهم وقال : ' في الحقيقة ، جميعكم على صواب! كل واحد منكم لمس جزءًا واحدًا فقط من الفيل . إذا توقفتم للحظة ، واستمعتم إلى ما تعتقدوه جميعًا ، يمكنكم جميعًا أن تعرفوا شكل الفيل . '

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1- What do you think the moral of the story is ?

- a) Blind men are very clever, they are good at describing things.
- b) The elephant is the biggest animal in the world.
- c) When we listen to other people, we can understand the world better.

2- The ..... blind man said this elephant shaped just like a leaf.

- a) fourth
- b) fifth
- c) sixth

### Language focus

- Wh-question in past simple tense.

السؤال بكلمة استفهام في زمن الماضي البسيط.

- لعمل سؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

Question word + did + subject + inf + comp ?

كلمة الاستفهام

تكملة + التصريف الثاني + Subject

Ex: - What did the blind men want to find out?

They wanted to discover how the elephant looks.



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

اسمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ)  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Salah went to the museum with his cousin.
- 2- Hassan can see the things.
- 3- Hassan touched the parrot's body.
- 4- Hassan thought that the parrot has a long beak.

## 2 Listen and complete.

استمع و اكمل.

- 1- Nour was at the .....
- 2- Nour went with her .....
- 3- Nour saw a .....
- 4- The giraffe is the ..... animal. Its coat is light brown.

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

قرأ وصل.

- |                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1- The elephant is the biggest | a) describing things.    |
| 2- Blind men are very good at  | b) long and flexible.    |
| 3- The elephant's trunk is     | c) look like?            |
| 4- Spear is                    | d) You're wrong.         |
| 5- What does the cat           | e) a long pointed stick. |
|                                | f) animal at the zoo.    |

## 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الالية

- 1- are - elephant's - The - ears - flat - and - smooth .
- 2- you - do - what - want - find out - to ?
- 3- hard - is - task - 's - The elephant - long - and .
- 4- can - men - Blind - not - see .

## 5 Read the text and answer the questions

اقرأ النص واكتب على الأسئلة

Last Friday, I and my family went to Africa Safari Park. The place is really nice with a lot of animals to see. It's not a real safari park but an open zoo. We couldn't believe what we have seen in this place. We saw lots of animals such as monkeys. The monkey has wide eyes and a long tail. It has strong teeth. Its body is covered with brown fur. We also saw lions. A lion has a strong body, teeth and jaws. Its coat is yellow-gold.

## 6 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- They went to Africa Safari .....  
a) Bed                      b) Park                      c) Street                      d) Town
- 2- The monkey's fur is .....  
a) red                      b) brown                      c) white                      d) blue

## 7 Answer the following.

- 3- When did they go to Africa Safari Park?  
.....
- 4- What does the lion look like?  
.....

## 8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الالية

The elephant's tail is just like a rope

## 9 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Description of your favorite animal!"

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة عن "وصف حيوانك المفضل"

(What does it look like? - Where does it live?)



Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

stomachache  
medicine  
throat  
cut

playground  
dear  
nurse  
bandage

ملاعب  
عزيزي/عزيزتي  
ممرضة  
ضمادة

Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

I don't feel well  
sleep well  
Achool  
cut on my arm  
Don't worry.  
Come in.

لا أشعر أني على ما يرام  
ينام بشكل جيد  
صوت العطس  
جرح في ذراعي  
لا تقلق.  
ادخل.

Reading: What's the matter with Ashraf?

- Listen, read and role-play.

استمع وامرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار

Ashraf: Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

أشرف: مرحبا يا دكتور. لا أشعر أني على ما يرام.

Doctor: What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

الطبيب: ما الأمر يا أشرف؟ هل لديك صداع في الرأس؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

أشرف: لا يا دكتور. ليس لدي صداع.

Doctor: Do you have a stomachache?

الطبيب: هل لديك ألم في المعدة؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

أشرف: لا يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في المعدة.

Doctor: Do you have a toothache?

الطبيب: هل لديك ألم في الأسنان؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache.

I have ... I have ... Achool

أشرف: لا يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في الأسنان. لدي ... أنا أتشو (صوت العطس)!

Doctor: Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

الطبيب: يا عزيزي! عندك برد. ابق في المنزل ونام جيدا وتناول هذا الدواء.

Read: What part of Nahla's body hurt?

Nurse: Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

الأم: ادخلي يا نهلة. ما الأمر؟

Nahla: I fell over in the playground.

فارس: لقد وقعت في الملعب.

Nurse: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

الأم: يا عزيزتي. أين موضع الألم؟

Nahla: Here. I have a cut on my arm.

فارس: هنا. لدي جرح في ذراعي.

Nurse: Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

الأم: أوه، نعم، فهمت. لا تقلقي. سأقوم بتنظيفه ووضع ضمادة عليه.

Nahla: Thank you, nurse.

فارس: شكرا لك أيتها الممرضة.

Answer the questions.

- Where did Nahla fall over?

- What will the nurse do?



## Taking about illnesses.

التحدث عن الأمراض

## We use have / has to talk about illness.

- نستخدم **have / has** للتحدث عن المرض الموجود عندنا.

- للتحدث عن المرض الموجود عندنا نستخدم:

(I, we, you, they + فاعل جمع) + **have** +  $\frac{a}{an}$  + المرض .  
 (He, she, It, + فاعل مفرد) + **has**

Ex: - I **have** a headache.- She **has** a stomachache.- Amir **has** an earache.

- عند النفي نستخدم:

(فاعل جمع) + **don't have** +  $\frac{a}{an}$  + المرض .  
 (فاعل مفرد) + **doesn't have**

Ex: - My sisters **don't have** a cold.- Adam **doesn't have** a cough.

- عند السؤال بهل نستخدم:

Do + فاعل جمع + **have** +  $\frac{a}{an}$  + المرض ?  
 Does + فاعل مفرد

Ex: - Do you have a headache?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

- Does Nader have a sore throat?

- Yes, he does.

- No, he doesn't. He has a cold.

## Check your language

## Read and correct.

اقرأ و صحح.

1- I **has** a stomachache.

(.....)

2- She **don't has** a toothache.

(.....)

## Exercises

## Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Dina fell off her.....
- 2- Dina has a cut on her.....
- 3- The doctor will put a ..... on her leg.
- 4- Dina says "..... you" to the doctor.

## Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ و وصل.

- |                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1- What's              | a cough.          |
| 2- She has             | the matter?       |
| 3- My brother's throat | really hurts him. |
| 4- I have a cut        | are sick.         |
| 5- Do you have         | a stomachache?    |
|                        | on my arm.        |

## Rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الآتية

- 1- does - it - Oh - Where - dear! - hurt ?
- 2- earache - has - My - father - an .
- 3- have - Does - Maha - a - throat - sore ?
- 4- fell - My - over - friend - the - in - playground .
- 5- have - cold - No - a - don't - I .



## (B) A special hospital

## Lesson 3

### Main Vocabulary

### المصطلحات الرئيسية

special hospital	مستشفى خاصة (مستشفى)	unwell	مرضى (ليس بحسن)
patient	مريض	relatives	أقارب
family members	أفراد العائلة	crowded	مزدحم
unusual	غير عادي	staff	طاقم المستشفى
sick person	شخص مريض	injection	حقنة

### Vocabulary

### المصطلحات اللغوية

country	دولة	wonderful	رائع
southern	جنوبي	classes	حصة
alone	وحيد / منفرد	corridor	ممر
busy	مستعجل / مزدحم	student	طالب
useful	مفيد	lessons	دروس
even	حتى	bridge	جسر

### Conjugation of verbs

### تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
treat	يعالج	treated	عالج	visit	يزور	visited	زار
work	تعالج / تعالج	worked	عمل	return	يعود	returned	عاد

#### Irregular verbs

teach	تعليم	taught	become	أصبح	became
-------	-------	--------	--------	------	--------

### Expressions and prepositions

### التعبيرات وحروف الجر

from all over the country	من جميع أنحاء الدولة
turn ..... into .....	يحول ..... إلى .....
Not only ....., but it also .....	ليس فقط ..... ولكنه أيضًا .....

instead of  
look after  
care for

بدلاً من  
يعطي حقن  
يعطي حقن

يتعلم كيف أن  
يعطي حقن

### Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

- The ..... teach the family members how to change a bandage and give an injection.  
a) teachers      b) staff      c) engineers
- The ..... is a place that treats patients.  
a) hospital      b) supermarket      c) school
- We should care ..... our relatives.  
a) of      b) for      c) at
- The street is very ..... , it's full of cars.  
a) crowded      b) useful      c) patient

### Reading: A special hospital

#### Listen and Read.

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative.

في مستشفى في بنغالور، وهي مدينة في جنوب الهند، هناك العديد من المرضى. تعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد. مع كل مريض، يتواجد حوالي عشرة أفراد من العائلة. في الهند، من غير المعتاد أن يذهب المريض وحده إلى المستشفى. عادة ما تذهب الأسرة مع قريبهم المريض.



This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.



هذا يعني أن المستشفى غالباً ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة للغاية. لكن بدلاً من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى، يقوم طاقم العاملون في هذا المستشفى بعمل شيء مميز. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شيء رائع. لديهم فصول لتعليم الأسرة أن يعتنوا بالشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيفية تغيير الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

كل يوم بعد الظهر، يقوم طاقم العاملون في المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية. تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة وأحياناً المرضى - طلاباً. لا يساعد هذا فقط موظفي المستشفى، ولكنه يساعد أيضاً العائلات على رعاية أقاربهم عند عودتهم إلى المنزل. يعلم الموظفون أن الدروس تنجح لأنه لا يعود عدد كبير من المرضى إلى المستشفى الآن.

### Answer the questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة.

1 Is it a good idea to teach family members how to help the patient? Why? Why not?

2 Have you been to the hospital with someone who was sick?

## The prefix البادئة

- We can add the prefix (un-) to make the opposite of an adjective:  
- يمكننا إضافة البادئة (un-) لكي نصنع عكس الصفة.

Ex	usual	عادي	→	unusual	غير عادي
	safe	آمن	→	unsafe	غير آمن
	well	بصحة جيدة / بخير	→	unwell	مريض / ليس بخير
	happy	سعيد	→	unhappy	غير سعيد
	fit	لائق بدنياً	→	unfit	غير لائق بدنياً

- We add the prefix (ir-) when the word begins with (r):  
- نضيف البادئة (ir-) إذا كانت الكلمة تبدأ بحرف (r).

Ex	responsible	مسؤول	→	irresponsible	غير مسؤول
	regular	منتظم	→	irregular	غير منتظم

- We add the prefix (il-) when the word begins with (l):  
- نضيف البادئة (il-) إذا كانت الكلمة تبدأ بحرف (l).

Ex:	legal	قانوني	→	illegal	غير قانوني
-----	-------	--------	---	---------	------------

- We can add the prefix (im-) when the word begins with (m or p):  
- نضيف البادئة (im-) إذا كانت الكلمة تبدأ بحرف (p أو m).

Ex:	possible	ممكن	→	impossible	مستحيل
	polite	مهذب	→	impolite	غير مهذب
	moral	أخلاقي	→	immoral	غير أخلاقي



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1- Marwan's mother was sick.
- 2- Marwan and his mother went with his father to the hospital.
- 3- There weren't many patients at the hospital.
- 4- The hospital staff looked after Marwan's father.

## 2 Listen and complete.

- 1- Hager didn't go to the ..... yesterday.
- 2- Hager had a .....
- 3- The doctor gave some .....
- 4- Hager should ..... home.

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1- There are many patients | a- give injections. |
| 2- My mom teaches me to    | b- the matter?      |
| 3- What's                  | c- very helpful.    |
| 4- The hospital staff are  | d- in the hospital. |
| 5- I don't have            | e- I have a cold.   |
|                            | f- a toothache.     |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Rana. I go to school with my sister every morning. Yesterday, we woke up late. We missed the bus. We walked very fast to go on time. Suddenly, someone drove his car through the cross walk. He didn't stop. My sister fell over. I was very shocked. I called for an ambulance. We went to the hospital. My sister had a cut on her arm. The hospital staff cleaned it and put a bandage on it.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1- They wanted to go to school .....  
a) late                      b) on time                      c) at night                      d) early
- 2- They ..... up late yesterday.  
a) wake                      b) woke                      c) walk                      d) walking

## 2 Answer the following questions.

- 3- What happened to Rana's sister?  
.....
- 4- What did the hospital staff do?  
.....

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- my brother - to - changes - The - nurse - a bandage .  
.....
- 2- from - patients - treats - The hospital - over - all - the country .  
.....
- 3- Dr. - unhappy - I - my - lost - pen - because .  
.....
- 4- many relatives - go to - People - usually - the hospital - with.  
.....

## 4 Punctuate the following.

how do you feel

Hospitals in india are very crowded

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your sister who has a stomachache"

اكتب مقبره من ٤٠ كلمة عن "أختك التي تعاني من ألم في المعدة"  
(ill - doctor)



### Main Vocabulary

### العبارات الرئيسية



bandage  
ضمادة



honey and lemon  
عسل وليمون



pills  
أقراص دواء



sunscreen  
كريم واقى من الشمس

### Vocabulary

### المفردات المهمة

a cut knee  
sunburn  
bacteria  
wounds  
medical care  
recently  
however  
perhaps = maybe  
cupboard  
exactly

جرح في الركبة  
حروق الشمس  
بكتيريا  
جروح  
طبي  
رعاية  
حديثاً  
مع ذلك  
ربما  
خزانة  
بالضبط / بالتحديد

power  
treatment  
injuries  
illnesses  
healing  
sweet  
skin  
substance  
quickly  
way  
type

قوة  
علاج  
إصابات  
أمراض  
شفاء  
حلوة  
جلد  
مادة  
بسرعة  
طريق  
نوع

### Conjugation of verbs

### تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
try	يحاول	tried	حاول	need	يحتاج	needed	احتاج
contain	يحتوى	contained	احتوى	kill	يقتل	killed	قتل
mix	يخلط	mixed	خلط	damage	يتلف	damaged	تلف
heal	يشفى	healed	شفى				

### Irregular verbs

cut يقطع cut put يضع put

### Expressions and prepositions

### التعبيرات وحروف الجر

used as استخدمت  
good for مفيد لـ  
a jar of honey برطمان عسل  
was first used استخدم لأول مرة  
has been used تم استخدامه

### Words and definitions

### الكلمات والتعريفات

**wound** an injury that damages your skin.  
إصابة تتلف جلدك.  
**bacteria** very small things that can make you ill.  
أشياء صغيرة جدًا يمكنها أن تجعلك مريض.  
**treatment** medical care to help you get better.  
رعاية صحية تساعدك أن تتحسن.  
**heal** to get better.  
أن تتعافى.

### Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We use the ..... to keep us from sunburn.  
a) headache b) sore throat c) pills d) sunscreen
- We have honey and lemon when we have a .....  
a) cut knee b) sore throat c) headache d) toothache
- The nurse put a ..... on a cut knee.  
a) bandage b) sunscreen c) pills d) honey



- Listen and read.

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast . Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.



هل تحب العسل؟ ربما تستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار. أو ربما تستمتع به في البسبوسة الحلوة. لكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس فقط طعام؟ إنه يستخدم كعلاج أيضاً لبعض الإصابات والأمراض.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

في بعض الدول، كان يستخدم العسل من قبل الأطباء منذ آلاف السنين. أيضاً استخدم لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالي ٥٠٠٠ عام. حديثاً، حاول العلماء اكتشاف سبب كون العسل بالتحديد مفيداً جداً في شفاء الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment .So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your

يعلم العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي على أشياء يمكن أن تساعد في قتل البكتيريا. هذا يساعد الجروح على الشفاء بسرعة أكبر. يجب أن تكون حذراً، مع ذلك. العسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص فقط آمن للاستخدام كعلاج، لذلك إذا كان لديك برطمان من العسل في خزانةك، يمكنك خلطه مع الحليب لتحسين السعال. ولكن لا تضعه على الجرح في ركبتيك!

Answer the following questions.

1- What did doctors use thousands of years ago?

2- What can make your cough better?

استمع واكتب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ)  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Last week, they were sick.
- 2- His brother had a sore throat.
- 3- His father gave his brother some pills.
- 4- His sister had a cut arm.

2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

- 1- Mazen wants to ..... the doctor a few questions.
- 2- To protect your skin from a sunburn, you can use a .....
- 3- When you have a ....., you can mix honey with lemon.
- 4- Mazen says "Thank you" to the .....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 I cut my knee     | a I have a cough.                        |
| 2 I put the bandage | b on my knee.                            |
| 3 Honey is used as  | c a treatment.                           |
| 4 Treatment is      | d a medical care to help you get better. |
| 5 Bees make         | e honey.                                 |
|                     | f last Friday.                           |

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة

In class, this week we're talking about the usages of the honey. Bees make honey. Honey is a sweet liquid food. Its color is dark golden. We can use honey to make basbousa, konafa and other desserts. On the other hand, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. It can help to kill bacteria.



## Unit 8

### Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The main idea in the text is about .....
- a) honey      b) bees      c) patient      d) basbousa
- 2- The underlined word "wounds" means .....
- a) bandages      b) cuts      c) illnesses      d) substance

### Answer the following questions.

- 3- What is honey?
- 4- What did Egyptian doctors use honey for?

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- is - an injury - that - Wound - your - skin - damages .
- 2- for - as - is - used - Honey - a treatment - some illnesses .
- 3- we - can - What - use - honey - for ?
- 4- honey - of - types - Some - kill - can - bacteria .

### Punctuate the following.

why is honey so good for healing wounds

i cut my arm last Monday

### Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The importance of honey"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "أهمية العسل".

- What can we use honey for?      - Do you like honey?

## (B) Pronunciation

### How to make the /f/ sound

### كيفية نطق الصوت /f/

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but don't use your voice!

ابق الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ ولكن لا تستخدم صوتك (لا تكون الصوتية).

frog	ضفدع	scarf	وشاح
fruit	فاكهة	fan	مروحة
leaf	ورقة شجر	life	حياة
erry	معدية / مركب نهري	ew	قليل (للعدد)
safe	آمن	fine	رائع

### How to make the /v/ sound

### كيفية نطق الصوت /v/

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but do use your voice!

ابق الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ ولكن استخدم صوتك (حرك الأحبال الصوتية).

vet	طبيب بيطري	leave	يفادر - يترك
vegetables	خضروات	lie	يعيش
television	تلفزيون	ery	جدا
win	شاحنة صغيرة	iew	منظر
lovely	جميل	sa e	يوفر - يدخر



## 1 Read and match (A) with (B).

- 1 Can I ask you
- 2 We have a balcony
- 3 Leave the lovely
- 4 It's safe to wear a helmet
- 5 Turn on the fan, please.

- a with a nice view.
- b leaf on the tree.
- c when you ride your bike.
- d is very fast.
- e The weather is cold.
- f a few questions?

## 2 Read and write the missing word.

1- My father works with animals. He is a .....

2- Rania ..... the party to catch the train.

3- I'm ..... hungry.

4- I have a pet .....

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- has - sister - My - blue - a - scarf .

2- friends - my - and - I - watch - at night - television .

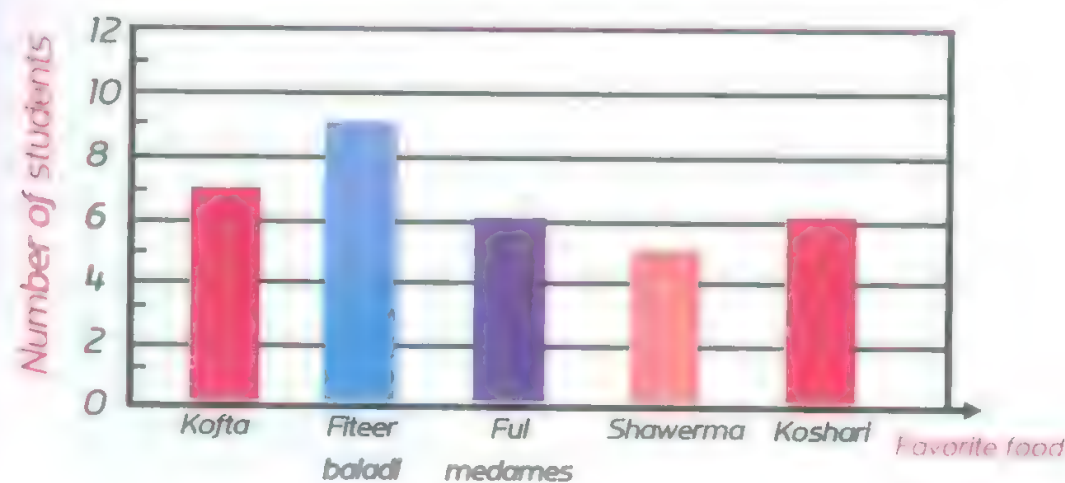
3- has - uncle - My - van - a big .

4- eating - like - I - fruit - vegetables - and .

A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, 33 students were asked about their favorite food. Here is the result of their survey.

المخطط الشريطي هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. أسئلوا 33 طالباً عن أطعمتهم المفضلة. هذه هي النتيجة لهذه الإحصائية.

Favorite food	Number of students
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Ful medames	6
Shawerma	5
Koshari	6



\* Which food is the most popular?

- Fiteer baladi is the most popular food.



Read the information and draw a bar chart.

اقرأ المعلومات وارسم مخطط شريطي

Last Friday, my father asked us about our favorite toys. Here is the result of our survey.

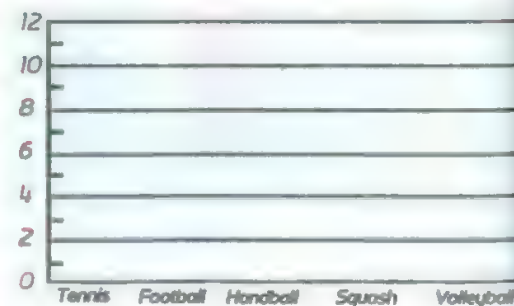
Favorite toy	Number of family members
Robot	5
Bear	6
Doll	4
Balloon	2
Car	3



- Which favorite toy was loved by the biggest number of members?

At school, Last Sunday, I and my friends talked about our favorite sports. Here is the result of our survey.

Favorite sport	Number of students
Tennis	2
Football	10
Handball	7
Squash	6
Volleyball	2



- Which sport was practiced by the biggest number of students?

balanced diet  
first aid kit  
responsible for  
stay healthy  
cleansing wipe  
medical gloves  
rubber band  
in addition to  
make time

نظام غذائي متوازن  
صندوق الإسعافات الأولية  
مسئول عن  
يبقى صحياً  
منديل تطهير  
قفازات طبية  
رباط مطاط  
بالإضافة إلى  
يخصص وقت

expert  
look after  
focus on  
safety pin  
insect bite  
cream  
soap  
the best

خبير  
يعتني بـ  
يركز على  
دبوس أمان  
لدغة حشرة  
كريم  
صابون  
الأفضل

### Healthy things to do

أشياء صحية تفعلها

play sport  
eat vegetables  
read books  
get enough sleep  
visit a doctor  
spend time with friends  
drink plenty of water  
do some exercise  
go to bed early  
keep your body moving

يلعب رياضة  
ياكل خضروات  
يقرأ كتب  
يحصل على نوم كافٍ  
يزور طبيب  
يقضي وقت مع الأصدقاء  
يشرب كثير من الماء  
يقوم ببعض التمرينات  
يذهب للنوم مبكراً  
حافظ على حركة جسمك

### Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- It's important to ..... healthy food.

a) eat                      b) drink                      c) play                      d) spend

2- You should ..... between eight and nine hours.

a) visit                      b) sleep                      c) eat                      d) read



## Reading: Staying healthy

My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

العرض الذي أقدمه اليوم يدور حول البقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم حقاً تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضروات واتباع نظام غذائي متوازن. هناك الكثير من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا القيام بها للاعتناء بصحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

ينبغي أن تقوم ببعض التمارين الرياضية كل يوم. من المهم جداً أن تحافظ على تحريك الجسم. ممارسة الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

شيء آخر يمكنك القيام به هو الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكراً. من المهم الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تحصل على ما بين ثمانية وتسعة ساعات من النوم كل ليلة.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too.

Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن واحدة من أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هي قضاء الوقت مع أصدقائك. ليس جسمك فقط هو ما تحتاج الحفاظ على صحته، بل يجب أن تخصص وقتاً للتركيز على أن تكون سعيداً أيضاً. قضاء الوقت مع عائلتك وأصدقائك طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

### Answer the questions.

1- Is it important to eat fruit and vegetables?

.....

2- How many hours of sleep should you get?

.....

## Exercises

Lessons 5,6

### 1 Listen and complete.

- 1- Mona plays ..... . She is healthy.
- 2- Mona gets enough ..... every night.
- 3- Asil ..... plenty of water.
- 4- Asil spends time with her .....

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1- It's important to    | a- with my friends.         |
| 2- I'm playing sports   | b- family and friends.      |
| 3- Spend time with your | c- some exercise every day. |
| 4- To stay healthy, eat | d- healthy foods.           |
| 5- You should do        | e- drink plenty of water.   |
|                         | f- drink cola.              |

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

It's important to have a healthy life. Good health will lead to a happy life. When you are healthy, you can enjoy all the things in life. You should do some things to stay healthy. It's important to eat healthy food. You can exercise every day and take a morning walk. It's important to keep your body moving. It's important to get enough sleep. You should spend time with your family and friends.

### 4 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about .....  
a) healthy life      b) unhealthy life      c) foods      d) sports



## Unit 8

2- The underlined word "get" means .....

- a) lose      b) have      c) give      d) drop

**B Answer the following questions.**

3- Why should we have good health?

What things should I do to stay healthy?

**4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.** رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- drink - should - You - plenty - water - of .

2- have - to - important - It - is - a balanced diet .

3- on - focus - should - You - being - happy .

4- Shimaa - does - What - to - do - stay - healthy ?

**5 Punctuate the following.** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

why should we look after our health

it s important to get enough sleep.

**6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " How to be healthy? "**

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "كيف تكون بصحة جيدة".

( do exercise – healthy food )

## Review on unit 8

### Important vocabulary

ankle	كاحل	flexible	مرن
cold	برد	spear	رمح
earache	ألم في الأذن	rope	حبل
shoulder	كتف	relatives	أقارب
stomachache	ألم في المعدة	crowded	مزدحم
back	ظهر	staff	طاقم العاملين
cough	كحة	injection	حقنة
headache	صداع	corridor	ممر
sore throat	التهاب الحلق	helpful	متعاون
toothache	ألم الأسنان	hospital	مستشفى
unwell	ليس بخير	patient	مريض
cut knee	جرح في الركبة	bandage	ضمادة
glacier	جبل جليدي	sunscreen	كريم الشمس
ocean	محيط	honey and lemon	عسل وليمون
stream	جدول مائي	pill	قرص دواء
drinking water	ماء الشرب	sunburn	حروق الشمس
salt water	ماء مالح	bacteria	بكتيريا
lake	بحيرة	back	ظهر
river	نهر	heal	يشفي
blind	أعمى / كفيف	scissors	مقص
trunk	زلومة الفيل	insect bite	لدغة حشرة
tusk	ناب	cream	كريم
soap	صابون	medical gloves	قفازات طبية

### Verbs

### Irregular verbs

have/has	عنده - لديه	had	hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt
tell	يخبر	told	meet	يقابل	met
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	teach	يُعلم	taught
cut	يجرح	cut	put	يضع	put



## Unit 8

### Important language

- السؤال عن المشكلة / المرض نستخدم:

What's the matter?

ما الأمر / ما المشكلة؟

- عند الإجابة نستخدم:

I have  $\frac{a}{an}$  + illness المرض.

My + جزء الجسم + hurts.

Ex: - What's the matter?

- I have a headache.

- My ear hurts.

## General Test on unit 8

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- They were at the zoo yesterday.
- 2- They saw a crocodile.
- 3- The giraffe is the tallest animal in the zoo.
- 4- The elephant's trunk is long and flexible like a snake.

### 2 Listen and complete.

- 1- Sara didn't go to ..... yesterday.
- 2- Sara had a .....
- 3- Sara went to the .....
- 4- Sara's ..... went with her to the dentist.

## Review

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- 1 What's the
- 2 The elephant's task
- 3 Blind
- 4 Water is important
- 5 Fiteer baladi is

- a the most popular food.
- b matter?
- c for your health.
- d unhealthy to drink.
- e is hard, long and smooth.
- f can't see.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Everyone likes to stay fit and healthy. Health is important to have a happy life. To be healthy, it's important to do some healthy things. You shouldn't eat junk food as they don't have any nutrients. Instead of having these unhealthy food, your meal should have fresh vegetables, fruits, milk and fish. You should do some exercises every day. Running and cycling are important to keep our body moving. You should get enough sleep. ... should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

### 5 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about how to be .....  
a) unhealthy      b) healthy      c) bad      d) fat
- 2- The underlined word "cycling" means .....  
a) riding a bike      b) driving      c) swimming      d) reading



## Unit 8

**B** Answer the following questions.

3- Why shouldn't you eat junk food?

4- What should you do to stay healthy?

**5** Rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1- like - You - Do - eating - vegetables ?

2- wounds - was - He - used to - treat - by doctors .

3- a cold - has - She - and - throat - a sore .

4- have - you - Un - enache - an ?

**E** Punctuate the following

where does it hurt

No she doesn't.

**7** Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about:

"Your little brother who had a toothache"

(Where did it hurt? - What did you do for him?)

## Unit nine

حيوانى المفضل

### My favorite animal

**Did you know?**

Flamingoes eat with their heads upside down. They use their tongue to catch their food.





## Vocabulary

kangaroo  
lion  
snail  
shelter  
rest  
branch  
breeze  
comfortable

panda  
penguin  
parrot  
pouch  
save  
nut  
useless

bat  
dolphin  
wonderful  
wildlife park  
trunk  
exhausted  
ungrateful

## Language

### Can for ability in the present:

I can play basketball.  
I can't speak Italian.

### Could for ability in the past:

I could speak French when I lived in France.

I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.

**The noun suffix -er:** teach - teacher  
**ed and ing adjectives:**

I am very interested in history.  
History is so interesting!

## Reading

Online chat about a day at a wildlife park

Aesop's (The travelers and the tree)  
Text about Ancient Egyptian society  
Email about an unusual animal

## Writing

Email about an unusual animal  
infographic about an animal habitat

## Speaking

Talking about things you could/couldn't do at different ages

Talking about sources of water  
Discussion about Ancient Egyptian society

## Listening

Words about wildlife.

## Phonics

Correctly pronounce voiced sounds /v/ and /w/.

استخدام "يستطيع أن" للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع:

يمكنني لعب كرة السلة.  
لا أستطيع تحدث الإيطالية.

استخدام "استطاع أن" للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي:

استطعت تحدث الفرنسية عندما كنت أعيش في فرنسا.

لم أستطع ركوب الأتوبيس فاضطرت أن أمشي.

لاحقه الاسم: معلم - معلم  
صفات المنتهية بـ ing و ed:

أنا مهتم جدًا بالتاريخ.  
التاريخ مثير جدًا للاهتمام.

الندوة عبر الإنترنت حول يوم في حديقة الحيوانات البرية

قصة إيسوب عن المسافرين والشجرة  
رسالة عن المجتمع المصري القديم  
بريد إلكتروني عن حيوان غير عادي

بريد إلكتروني عن حيوان غير عادي.  
رسم توضيحي حول موطن حيوان.

تحدث عن أشياء أمكنتك / لم يمكنك فعلها في مختلف الأعمار

تحدث عن مصادر المياه  
مناقشة حول المجتمع المصري القديم

كلمات عن الحياة البرية.

على الأصوات بشكل صحيح /w/ و /v/.

## Lesson 1

## Wildlife

الحياة البرية

## Main vocabulary

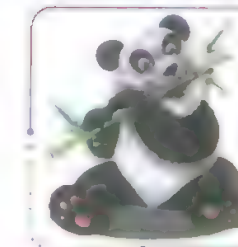
المفردات الرئيسية



flamingo  
فلامينجو



kangaroo  
كنغر



panda  
باندا



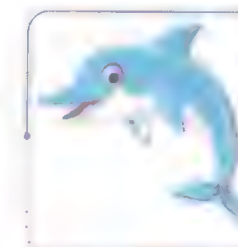
bat  
خفاش



lion  
أسد



penguin  
بطريق



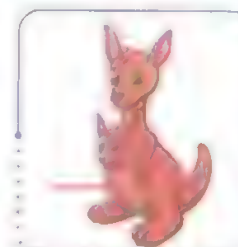
dolphin  
دولفين



snail  
حبرون



parrot  
بيغاء



pouch  
جراب / كيس



wildlife park  
حديقة الحيوانات البرية



rainforest  
غابة أميتوية

## Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

shell

قوقعة

bamboo

خيزران

wonderful

رائع

sweet

جميل

fridge

ثلاجة

wildlife

حياة برية

amazed

مدهش

French

فرنسي

German

ألماني



## Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وال介ومات

had a day out	فعل يوم بالخارج	do a project on	لعمل مشروع من
so well	جيد جدًا	have got to + المصدر	يجب أن
jump on two legs	يقفز على ساقي	live on ice	يعيش على الجليد
a bit sad	قليل حزين	It's so sweet!	إنه حلو جدًا

## Conjugation of verbs

تحويل الافعال

## Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
jump	يقفز	jumped	قفز	stay in	يمكث في	stayed	مكث
talk	تكلم	talked	تكلم	repeat	يكمل	repeated	كمل

## Irregular verbs

catch	يأخذ	caught	أخذ	fly	يربح	flew	ربح
swim	يسبح	swam	سبح	say	يقول	said	قال
feed	يغذي	fed	غذى	hide	يخفي	hid	خفى

## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- A ..... can jump on two legs.  
a) bat                      b) snail                      c) dolphin                      d) kangaroo
- A ..... eats bamboo.  
a) panda                      b) lion                      c) fox                      d) gazelle
- A ..... has a shell on its back.  
a) penguin                      b) dolphin                      c) snail                      d) parrot
- A ..... swims in a group in the ocean.  
a) dolphin                      b) flamingo                      c) bear                      d) camel
- A ..... is a very big and strong cat.  
a) kangaroo                      b) rat                      c) lion                      d) snail

Parents notes

Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.

ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

## Reading:

## Where did Ramez go yesterday? أين ذهب رامي أمس؟

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع وقراء ثم تمثيل الأدوار

Ramez: Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

رامي: أهلاً! لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج مع عائلتي أمس.

Ayman: Where did you go?

أيمن: أين ذهبت؟

Ramez: I went to the new wildlife park - it was awesome!

رامي: ذهبت إلى حديقة الحياة البرية الجديدة - إنها رائعة!

Ayman: What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

أيمن: ماذا رأيت؟ هل تمكنت من الاقتراب من الأسود؟

Ramez: No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet!

Ayman: What birds did you see?

أيمن: ما الطيور التي رأيتها؟

Ramez: Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

رامي: الكثير، لكن مفضلاتي كانت الببغاوات. كانت جميلة جداً ويمكنهم التحدث! قلنا بعض الكلمات لكي يكررونها.

Ayman: What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

أيمن: ماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب الطقس البارد؟ هل رأيتوا أي منهم؟

Ramez: Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

Ayman: Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

أيمن: واو! هل كان هناك شيء كنت تريد أن تراه ولكنك لم تستطع؟

Ramez: The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

رامي: الخفافيش. أنا أفعل مشروعاً عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك كنت أريد أن أراها حقاً! لكنهم كانوا جميعاً مخبئين ولم أتمكن من رؤيتهم في الظلام.

KATR ELNADA

Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role-play with his/her friend.

ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه أو صديقتها.



**Ayman:** Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now  
- that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

**أيمن:** حسناً، يبدو هذا مدهشاً! يجب أن أطعم أرنبى الآن - هذا هو أكثر الحيوانات البرية التي سأراها اليوم

### Answer the questions.

اجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Why do you think they stayed in the car?

2- What is Ramez doing for school?

### Language focus

#### Expressing ability

التعبير عن المقدرة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي
<b>فاعل + can + inf</b> (مصدر الفعل) Ex: Birds <b>can</b> fly. He <b>can</b> speak French.	<b>فاعل + could + inf</b> Ex: I <b>could</b> swim at seven. They <b>could</b> sleep early.
Negative الإنفي	
<b>فاعل + can't + inf</b> Ex: She <b>can't</b> speak German. We <b>can't</b> play tennis.	<b>فاعل + couldn't + inf</b> Ex: You <b>couldn't</b> walk. They <b>couldn't</b> catch the bus.
Yes or No question السؤال بهل	
<b>Can + فاعل + inf ?</b> Ex: <b>Can</b> you play games? Yes, I <b>can</b> . No, I <b>can't</b> .	<b>Could + فاعل + inf ?</b> Ex: <b>Could</b> you read English? Yes, I <b>could</b> . No, I <b>couldn't</b> .

- يتم استخدام "when" كأداة ربط بين جملتين في الماضي البسيط كالآتي:

- I could speak when I was six months old.
- Could you play the piano when you were a child?

### 1 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.  
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- Joudy went to ..... with her family.
- 2- Joudy could see ..... at the zoo.
- 3- The parrots have wonderful mixed .....
- 4- Joudy and her family said some words to the parrots to .....

### 2 Read and match A with B.

اقرأ وصل.

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1- They saw                       | a- they can sit inside their mom's pouch. |
| 2- A snail has a shell.           | b- on the bats at school.                 |
| 3- I went to the                  | c- sad.                                   |
| 4- When the kangaroos are little, | d- lots of different animals.             |
| 5- He's doing a project           | e- It doesn't have legs or arms.          |
|                                   | f- new wildlife park.                     |

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Omar. I'm doing a project on the kangaroos. Kangaroos are wild animals that live in groups. They have large and powerful back legs, large feet, long strong tails for balance and small heads. Kangaroos can reach a weight of 90 kg, and can hop at speeds of up to 60 km/h. They move from place to place by jumping. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so cute!

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1- The text is about .....  
a) lions                      b) kangaroos                      c) snails                      d) cats



## Unit 9

Kangaroos can reach a weight of .....kg.

- a) 90      b) 20      c) 50      d) 30

### B Answer the following questions.

3- What do kangaroos have?

4- How can kangaroos move from place to place?

### D Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل السبعة.

1- sleep - on - can - But - down - trees - upside .

2- don't - have - Snails - or - legs - arms .

3- lions - Could - near - go - you - the ?

4- He - doing - on - is - parrots - project - a .

### E Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم في الجمل التالية.

Pandas live in china

Snails can t move quickly

### 6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Lions "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "الأسود".

( Africa - strong )

#### Parents' notes

90

- 1- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.  
2- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.  
3- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

- ١- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكون الجملة الصحيحة.  
٢- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.  
٣- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.

## Lesson 2

## A fable by Aesop

قصة خرافية بواسطة ايسوب

### Vocabulary

### المفردات اللغوية

traveller	مسافر	fable	قصة خرافية
once	ذات مرة	shelter	ماوى
dry	جاف	rest	راحة
trunk	جذع شجرة	area	منطقة
wide	عريض	meeting point	ملتقى/ نقطة التقاء
branch	فرع / غصن شجرة	shade	ظل
trader	تاجر	exhausted	متعب / منهك
breeze	نسمة هواء	nuts	بندق / ثمرات
useless	غير مفيد / بلا فائدة	unkind	غير عطف
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل	the country	الريف

### Conjugation of verbs

### تصريفات الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	ماضي	Present	ماضي
stop	يتوقف	save	يُفد
rest	يستريح	live	يعيش

#### Irregular verbs

give	يعطى	gave	fall	fell
------	------	------	------	------

### Expressions and prepositions

### التعبيرات وحروف الجر

give shelter	يوفر المأوى
move across	ينتقل عبر
new to the area	جديد على المنطقة
wake up	يستيقظ
fell asleep	استغرق في النوم
neither of them	لا أحد منهم
keep us cool	تبقىنا في درجة حرارة معتدلة
felt very sorry	شعر بالأسف الشديد

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.  
Help the student to learn the new expressions and prepositions.

- 1- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتكرارها.  
2- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم التعبيرات وحروف الجر.

91



## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- A ..... is a little wind.

- a) freeze      b) snow      c) breeze      d) ice

2- This tool is ..... I can't use it.

- a) useful      b) useless      c) comfortable      d) shade

3- You should thank people. Don't be .....

- a) ungrateful      b) grateful      c) good      d) kind

4- We always meet in the library. It's our .....

- a) meeting point      b) trunk      c) branch      d) shelter

## Reading: The travelers and the tree المسافرين والشجرة

- Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

ذات مرة كانت هناك شجرة قديمة كبيرة جدًا في أرض حارة وجافة. لقد عاشت لسنوات عديدة. وكان جذعها عريضًا جدًا وله العديد من الأغصان الخضراء. لقد كانت مشهورة لأنها الشجرة الوحيدة الموجودة في المكان. وكانت توفر المأوى والراحة لِمئات المسافرين أثناء تنقلهم عبر الريف. وكانت بالقرب من أربع مدن صغيرة والعديد من القرى في منطقتها وكانت نقطة التقاء للتجار.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea", said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

يوم ما اثنين من المسافرين، الذين كانوا جدد في المنطقة، كانوا يمشون عبر الحقل وراوا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهم، "لنأخذ قسطًا من الراحة تحت تلك الشجرة. حيث يوجد بعض الظل." قال صديقه: "هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا". استراحوا تحت الشجرة وشربوا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعوا بالظل والنعيم البارد. لأنهم كانوا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناموا.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

عندما استيقظوا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أي منهما أي طعام في حقائبهما لذا نظروا إلى أغصان الشجرة. قال أحدهم: "هذه الشجرة غير مفيدة. ليس بها طعام لنا - ليس هناك ثمرات أو فاكهة على أغصانها. قال الآخر لكن بها ظل وتبقينا باردين

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. قالت "كيف يمكنكم أن تكونا ناكرين الجميل جدًا؟" قال "لقد أتيتم إلي وأنتم تشعران بالحر ومرهقان. لقد أعطيتكما مكانًا لطيفًا ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتكم. انظروا لا يوجد مكان بارد آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا. نظر المسافرون حولهم وراوا أن الشجرة على صواب وشعروا بالأسف الشديد

## Answer the following questions.

1- How were the travelers when they came to the tree?

2- What is the moral of the story?

## Exercises

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع و اكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- When Yahia was young, He couldn't do anything.

2- When Yahia was eight, He could use a computer.

3- He couldn't play the piano, when he was ten.

4- He could play chess with his uncle when he was 15.



## 2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل

- Kareem is doing a school project on .....
- Bats can ..... very fast.
- Bats can sleep ..... on trees.
- Bats fly at .....

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرا وصل

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1- Could you speak           | a- where it lived.             |
| 2- Pandas can't              | b- so I had to walk.           |
| 3- The trunk of the tree has | c- He can swim.                |
| 4- I couldn't take the bus   | d- English when you were five? |
| 5- It was the only tree      | e- many green branches.        |
|                              | f- drive a car.                |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Yasser, when I was twelve, I could go to the park with my friends. I could climb the tree with my friends. One day, when we played and climbed the tree, we cut all the green branches of the tree. An old man watched us and he was so angry. He said "This tree is important for us. It is very useful". We knew since that day that trees are the best gift of nature for us. People get their food from trees. Trees also give us wood and shade. So it's important to plant lots of trees.

## A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Yasser could climb the tree when he was .....
- a) thirty      b) twelve      c) five      d) eight
- 2- The opposite of the word "useful" is .....
- a) useless      b) unsafe      c) bad      d) unfair

## D Answer the following questions

- 1- What happened when they played and climbed the tree?
- 2- Why are trees so important for our life?

## 5 Reorder the following.

إرتب التالي

- 1- could - play - or - you - tennis - football ?
- 2- gave - It - shelter - and - to - rest - travelers .
- 3- couldn't - French - was - I - speak - five - when - I .
- 4- travelers - were - I - and - tired - exhausted .

## E Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم في الجمل

could you speak english when you were a child?

there are no nuts or fruits

## 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Trees".

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " الأشجار "

- Why are trees important for humans?
- Why are trees important for animals?

- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.
- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complements.
- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.

٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.

٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.
- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate it.
- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.



# The water cycle

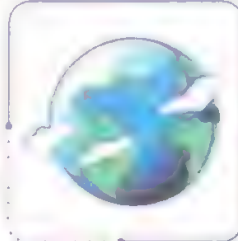
دورة الماء

## Main vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية



planet  
كوكب



Earth  
الأرض



rain  
مطر



water vapor  
بخار الماء



precipitation  
هطول المطر



evaporation  
التبخير



clouds  
سحب



stream  
مجرى مائي

## Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

How much...?  
groundwater  
rainwater

كم كمية...?  
مياه جوفية  
مياه الأمطار

process  
cycle  
lake

عملية  
دورة  
بحيرة

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
change	يتغير	changed	تغير	stay	يبقى	stayed	بقي
warm	يدفئ	warmed	دفئ	form	يكون	formed	تكون
smell	يشم	smelled/smelt	شم				

### Irregular verbs

become	يصبح	became	rose	تصعد / يرتفع
--------	------	--------	------	--------------

Parents' notes

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتكرارها.

## Expressions and prepositions

التعابير وحروف الجر

come from  
go straight  
change back into

يأتي من  
يذهب مباشرة  
يتحول مرة أخرى إلى

get cooler  
high up  
get heavier

يصبح أبرد  
عاليًا  
يصبح أثقل

## Let's learn

هيا نتعلم

**-precipitation:** rainwater that goes straight into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean.

**-هطول المطر:** مياه الأمطار التي تذهب مباشرة إلى المجاري المائية والأنهار والبحيرات ثم إلى المحيط.

**-evaporation:** water that the sun warms and becomes water vapor.

**-التبخير:** المياه التي تدفئها الشمس وتصبح بخار ماء.

## Reading: Where does our water come from?

### Listen and read.

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.

المطر يسقط من السحب في السماء. تذهب بعض مياه الأمطار مباشرة إلى الأرض. لكن الكثير منها يذهب إلى الجداول المائية والأنهار والبحيرات ثم إلى المحيط. هذه العملية تسمى هطول الأمطار.

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called 'evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.

تتغير بعض مياه الأمطار - فالشمس تدفئها وتصبح بخار ماء. هذه العملية تسمى 'التبخير'. لا نستطيع أن نرى أو نشم بخار الماء. إنه لا يبقى على الأرض. إنه يرتفع في الهواء. وعندما يصبح أكثر برودة في السماء، فإنه يتحول مرة أخرى إلى الماء ويشكل سحب. بينما تصبح السحب أكبر، الماء بداخلهم يصبح أثقل.

When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle starts again.

عندما يصبح الماء أثقل في السحب يسقط على الأرض وبدأ الدورة مرة أخرى.



Help the student to learn the new expressions and prepositions.  
Help the student listen to the text and read it.

ساعد التلميذ في تعلم التعبيرات وحروف الجر.  
ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وقراءته.



# Exercises

## 1 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1- The sun warms some of the rainwater | a- clouds in the sky.                            |
| 2- A lot of rainwater goes into        | b- and changes into water.                       |
| 3- The clouds get heavier              | c- so important?                                 |
| 4- Why is water                        | d- and rain falls to the ground.                 |
| 5- Rain falls from                     | e- streams, lakes and rivers and then the ocean. |
|  | f- and it becomes water vapor.                   |

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب على الأسئلة.

Water is so important for our life. Actually, we can't live without water. Our bodies are 70% water, we also use water for so many things. We need water to drink and stay alive. Without water, there is no life on the planet. So we should stop water pollution. We shouldn't waste water in useless things.

## 3 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- The text is about .....
- a) soil      b) air      c) water      d) cooking
- 2- We ..... waste water in useless things.
- a) should      b) shouldn't      c) are      d) do

## 4 Answer the following questions.

اجب على الأسئلة التالية.

- 3- What should we do?
- 4- Why do we need water?

# Lesson 3

التركيب الجملي

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- Where - our - does - water - from - come ?

rainwater - Some - straight - ground - into - the - goes .

- 3- is - This - process - called - precipitation .

doesn't - stay - in - Water - ground - the .

- 5- vapor - Water - back - into - water - changes .

## 4 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة التالية.

rain falls from clouds in the sky

why is water so important

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The importance of water"

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة عن "أهمية الماء"

- Why is water so important?

- How can we save water?



## (B) Social studies

### Main vocabulary



pharaoh

فرعون



nobles

أشراف



soldier

جندي



scribe

كاتب



artisan

خياط



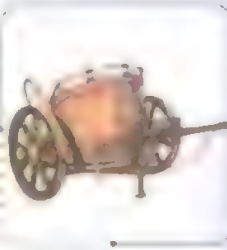
trader

تاجر



the army

الجيش



chariot

عجلة حربية

### Vocabulary

society  
person  
in charge  
materials  
kingdom  
ships

closely  
taxes  
jewelry  
records  
goods  
letters

بشكل وثيق / متجاور  
ضرائب  
مجوهرات  
سجلات  
سلع  
خطابات / رسائل

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
collect	يجمع	collected		organize	يُنظِّم / يَجهِّز	organized	
guard	يُحرس	guarded		produce	يُنتج	produced	
rule	يُحكم	ruled		train	يُتدرب	trained	

### Expressions and prepositions

play a role

write on

It was eaten by

يلعب دور

يكتب على

أُكلت بواسطة

the only people

made into

busy + v.ing

الذين لا يوجد لهم

يحول إلى

مشغول بـ

### Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- Ancient Egyptians soldiers used .....

- a) papyrus      b) jewelry      c) chariots      d) records

2- I bought some ..... from the market.

- a) good      b) goods      c) goals      d) goat

3- We travel on the water by .....

- a) chariots      b) taxis      c) buses      d) ships

### Let's learn

- The pharaoh ruled the country.
- The soldier kept the country safe.
- The scribe wrote letters and records.
- The trader bought and sold all the goods
- The farmer grew the food for everyone.
- The army guarded the kingdom.
- Artisan is someone who makes things with his hands.

هيا نتعلم

الفرعون حكم البلاد.  
الجندي حافظ على سلامة البلاد.  
الكاتب كتب الخطابات والسجلات.  
التاجر اشترى وبيع كل السلع.  
الفلاح زرع الغذاء للجميع.  
الجيش حرس المملكة.  
الحرفي هو الشخص الذي يصنع الأشياء بيده.

### Language focus

#### Talking about the job you would like to do

وظيفة + **would like to be** + فاعل

I **would like to be** a scribe, because I like writing.

I'd like to be a soldier to guard our country.

Parents notes

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتكرارها.

Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.

Help the student to learn about some jobs in Ancient Egypt.

Help the student to learn the new languages.

KATRELNADA

- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.  
- ساعد التلميذ في التعرف على بعض المهن في مصر القديمة.  
- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم اللغات الجديدة.



## Reading Ancient Egyptian society

المجتمع المصري القديم

### - Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

كان المجتمع المصري القديم مهمًا للغاية. الشخص المسؤول هو الفرعون. احتاج الفرعون إلى الكثير من الأشخاص لمساعدته. كان يعمل مباشرة مع النبلاء، وكانوا يجمعون الضرائب وينظمون الجنود.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

كان الجنود مشغولين بالحفاظ على مصر آمنة. نظرًا لأن مصر كانت دولة مهمة وغنية جدًا، كان الجنود يحرسون المملكة. كانت الجيوش قوية، وكان الجنود جيدين في عملهم.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

كان الكتبة مهمين للغاية لأنهم عادة ما كانوا الوحيدين الذين يستطيعون القراءة والكتابة. لقد تدربوا لمدة 12 عامًا قبل أن يكتبوا على ورق البردي. كتبوا أشياء مختلفة مثل الرسائل والسجلات والوثائق المهمة. بدون الكتبة، لن نعرف شيئًا تقريبًا عن مصر القديمة اليوم.

Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society - food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building.

التجار هم الأشخاص الذين يشترون ويبيعون كل شيء في المجتمع المصري القديم: الطعام والملابس والمجوهرات والتي الرسمي للجنود والسفن ومواد البناء.

Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, chariots, and clothes.

الحرفيون أخذوا المواد من التجار وصنعوا أشياء مختلفة يستخدمها الناس مثل الأثاث والعربات والملابس.

Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

أنتج المزارعون الطعام الذي كان يأكله الفرعون والنبلاء والجنود والكتبة والتجار والحرفيون.

## Exercises

### Lesson 3

#### 1 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.  
(بص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- Ancient Egyptian society was so .....
- 2- There were ..... to keep Egypt safe.
- 3- There were nobles who helped the .....
- 4- ..... were the only people who could read and write.

#### 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وامن.

- |            |                                       |
|------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 pharaoh  | They grew the food for everyone.      |
| 2 soldiers | He ruled the country.                 |
| 3 scribes  | They wrote everything for the people. |
| 4 traders  | They kept Ancient Egyptians safe.     |
| 5 farmers  | They bought and sold all the goods.   |
|            | They didn't do anything.              |

#### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

In social studies class, we learned that Ancient Egyptian society was so great, and each one of this society knew his role. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. Traders were the people who bought and sold everything like food, clothes, jewelry and uniforms. Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

#### 4 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- They learned about Ancient Egyptians in .....  
a) social studies      b) science  
c) math      d) geography



2- Farmers produced .....that was eaten by the pharaoh.

- a) food                      b) drink                      c) plant                      d) rice

### Answer the following questions.

3- What is the main idea of the text?

4- What did traders do?

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- the - food - grew - Farmers - everyone - for .

2- did - the - What - artisans - in - do - Egypt - Ancient ?

3- kept - Soldiers - Ancient - Egyptians - safe .

4- I - would - like - to - a - trader - be .

### Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية

ancient egyptian society was wonderful.

who was in charge of Egypt

### Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Ancient Egyptian society".

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " المجتمع المصري القديم ."

(nobles – the pharaoh)

## (A) This is so interesting

هذا مثير للاهتمام للغاية

### Language focus

#### The suffix (- er)

- We can add (er) to the end of words to make the person.

يمكننا إضافة اللاحقة (er) للكلمات لتحويلها لشخص (وظيفة الشخص).

#### Vocabulary

word	person
teach	يُعلم teacher معلم
read	يقرأ reader قارئ
climb	يتسلق climber متسلق
football	كرة قدم footballer لاعب كرة قدم
farm	مزرعة farmer مزارع
travel	يسافر traveler مسافر

### Making adjectives by adding (ed) or (ing)

- We can add (ed) to a verb to describe the feeling of a person.

يمكننا إضافة (ed) للفعل لوصف شعور شخص.

- We can add (ing) to a verb to describe something.

يمكننا إضافة (ing) للفعل لوصف شيء ما.

verb	-ed	-ing
bore	يُضجر/يمل bored	شاعر بالملل boring
interest	يُهم interested	مثير للاهتمام interesting
annoy	يزعج annoyed	مزعج annoying
amaze	يدهش amazed	مدهش amazing
tire	يرهق tired	مُرهق tiring
surprise	يفاجئ surprised	متفاجئ surprising

Ex: These movies bore me.

I am bored of these movies.

These movies are boring.

Loud music annoys me.

I am annoyed with loud music.

This loud music is annoying.

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.

5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.

6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

4- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكون الجملة الصحيحة.

5- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

6- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.

Help the student to know how to turn the word into person with adding (er) to words.

ساعد التلميذ في تعلم كيفية تحويل الكلمة إلى شخص بإضافة (er) للكلمات.

Help the student to learn the difference between adding (ed) or (ing) to adjectives.

ساعد التلميذ في تعلم الفرق بين إضافة (ed) و (ing) للصفات.



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع إلى النص (أو النص)  
والاستماع في آخر الكتاب

- 1- When Jana was 15, she could read short stories.
- 2- Jana was very interested in history.
- 3- When Ahmed was 5, he could play football.
- 4- Ahmed was interested in watching strange goals.

## 2 Listen and complete.

استمع إلى النص  
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- Mariam watched a movie about great .....
- 2- He ..... many mountains. He was a great climber.
- 3- He traveled to many ..... places around the world.
- 4- Manar was .....

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ النص

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1- That movie was               | a- interested in history.       |
| 2- A famous Egyptian footballer | b- about 30 books a year.       |
| 3- This reader reads            | c- surprising gift.             |
| 4- My favorite teacher          | d- in England is Mohamed Salah. |
| 5- I am very                    | e- so boring.                   |
|                                 | f- is Miss Dalia.               |

## 4 Reorder the following sentences.

رتب الجمل

- 1- My - was - grandfather - great - a - traveler .
- 2- she - Was - interested - history - in ?
- 3- bored - so - in - movie - that - He - was .
- 4- favorite - My - English - is - teacher - Miss - Dina .

## 5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Mr Mahmoud is an excellent farmer. He has a big farm with lots of trees. He plants the best tomatoes in town. He is very professional. He also keeps chickens, cows, goats and donkeys. I think that he has a tiring job. The animals are sometimes annoying.

## 6 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- He is a professional .....  
a) climber                      b) teacher                      c) farmer                      d) reader
- 2- The animals sometimes ..... him.  
a) annoy                      b) amazed                      c) bore                      d) surprise

## 7 Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does he plant?  
.....
- 4- What do you think about his job?  
.....

## 8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم

mohamed elneny is a very famous footballer.

he was surprised to see his friend

## 9 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Mohamed Salah".

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "محمد صلاح".

(footballer - amazing)

- 1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false.
- 2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.
- 3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.
- 4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.

1- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص والإجابة بـ صح أو خطأ.  
2- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.  
3- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة.  
4- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

- 5- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.
- 6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.
- 7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

5- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.  
6- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.  
7- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.



## (B) Pronunciation النطق

### Voiced sounds الأصوات الملتصقة

- They are the sounds that make a vibration in vocal cords. You can feel the vibration if you put your hand on your throat.

هذه الأصوات التي تصنع اهتزازاً في الحبال الصوتية. يمكنك الشعور بالاهتزاز إذا وضعت يديك على حلقك.

/v/	/w/
Vet	Winter شتاء
Vase	Wet مبتل
Violin	Wheel عجلة / إطار
Volcano	Water ماء
Vest	West
Village	Whale حوت
	Watermelon بطيخة

#### Tip

To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip.

To pronounce /w/ make a tight circle with your lips. لطق حرف (w) اصنع دائرة محكمة بشفتيك.

#### Other words

decide to	يقرر أن	shore	شاطئ
turn over	يستدير	afloat	طافياً

## Exercises

1 Complete the words with voiced sounds (V) or (W).

اكمل الكلمات بالأصوات المنطوقة.



hale



inter



iolin



illage

## Lesson 4

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| 1 The vet        | a- is very cold        |
| 2 We put flowers | b- loves animals       |
| 3 The whale      | c- wear a vest.        |
| 4 The winter     | d- in a vase.          |
| 5 I like to      | e- lives in the ocean. |
|                  | f- to stay afloat.     |

3 Read and complete with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل بالكلمات بين الأقواس.

(Wednesday - whales - west - volcano)

Last ....., I decided to travel ..... to look for a ....., but I had some problems. I met some ..... and they turned over my boat. I was shocked, but another boat came and save me.

4 Write a sentence on each word.

- 1 volcano .....
- 2 watermelon .....
- 3 water .....
- 4 village .....
- 5 violin .....



Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

email	بريد الكتروني	quick	سريع
basketball	كرة السلة	just	فقط
team	فريق	polar	قطبي
dugong / sea cow	الأطوم/بقرة البحر	hour	ساعة
note	ملحوظة	ostrich	نعامة
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع	play on a team	يلعب في فريق
nickname	اسم مستعار/شهرة	How are things?	كيف الأحوال؟
cute	لطيف	sea bed	قاع البحر
is called	يسمى		

Writing an email

كتابة بريد الكتروني

From : Dina  
To : Reem  
Subject : Unusual animals

Dear / Hi Reem,

How's life? / How are you? / كيف حال الحياة؟ / كيف حالك؟  
How are things? / كيف الأحوال؟  
I'm happy to write to you. / سعيد لأن أكتب إليك

**جمل الموضوع**

Write soon / أراك قريباً / اكتب قريباً  
All the best / أطيب الأمنيات / وداعاً الآن  
Hope to hear from you soon / أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً

Dina

اسم المراسل  
اسم المرسل اليه  
عنوان الموضوع  
مقدمة  
جمل الموضوع  
خاتمة الرسالة  
توقيع المرسل

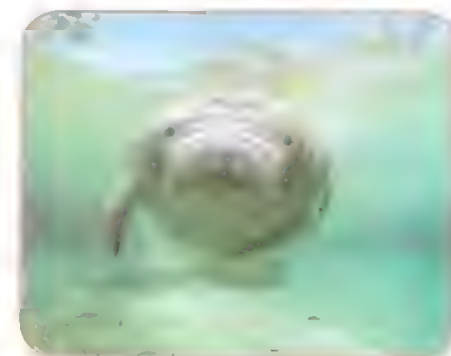
Writing: Unusual animals

From : Amir  
To : Tamer  
Subject : Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week. This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day. What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know. Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir



عزيزي تامر،  
شكراً على رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. كيف الأحوال؟ كان من الممتع حقاً أن أسمع عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أحب كرة السلة، وأنا ألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع. سنتحدث هذا الأسبوع كثيراً عن الحيوانات الغير عادية في المدرسة. نظرنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعض من مصر. حيواني الغير عادي المفضل من مصر هو الأطوم. هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه لديه وجه ودود جميل وإنه لطيف جداً! لقيه هو بقرة البحر ويقضي ساعات طويلة في أكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم. وماذا عنك؟ ما هو حيوانك الغير عادي المفضل؟ اكتب مرة أخرى وأخبرني أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً!  
أمير

- What's Amir's favorite unusual animal?



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (صحيح أو خطأ)  
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- The Blob fish is an unusual animal.
- 2- The Blob fish is from Egypt.
- 3- The Blob fish lives in the ocean.
- 4- The Blob fish can swim.

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## 2 Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.  
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

- 1- Aya's favorite unusual animal is .....
- 2- It's got a lovely, friendly .....
- 3- Its nickname is .....
- 4- It spends many hours eating .....

## 3 Read and match.

اقرأ واطرح

- |                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1- Amira wants to         | a- photos to Tamer.            |
| 2- Begin your email       | b- are also called sea cows.   |
| 3- Where does             | c- Hope to hear from you soon! |
| 4- Amir says that dugongs | d- this animal live?           |
| 5- He sends               | e- with Dear or Hi.            |
|                           | f- talk about wildlife.        |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Mazen. I'm doing some researches on unusual animals. My research is now about okapi. The okapi has got ears that look like donkey's ears and its legs look like zebra's legs. Today we knew that this strange African animal, it's not a donkey or a zebra. Like a giraffe, the okapi has got horns and a long black tongue. It eats leaves. It's really an amazing animal.

## 5 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Mazen is doing some researches on unusual .....  
a) birds                      b) animals                      c) fish                      d) lizards
- 2- It has a black .....  
a) tongue                      b) skin                      c) hair                      d) horn

## 6 Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why does it look like a giraffe?

- 4- What does it eat?

## 7 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الكلمات لتكوين الجمل الصحيحة

- 1- your - unusual - animal - What - favorite - is ?
- 2- play - on - I - a - team - a - once - week .
- 3- wants - Amr - to - talk - about - wildlife .
- 4- nickname - sea - Its - the - is - cow .

## 8 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Mona using the following guiding elements about: " An unusual animal "

- What does it look like?

- Where does it live?

From :   
To :   
Subject:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

- 1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false.
- 2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete them the sentences.
- 3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.
- 4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

- 1- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع الى النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
- 2- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
- 3- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة.
- 4- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

- 5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.
- 6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

- 5- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
- 6- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.



## Review on unit 9

### Important vocabulary

flamingo	نكرك للحمام	ungrateful
kangaroo	مأوى	shelter
panda	منعب	exhausted
penguin	مطول المطر	precipitation
snail	البحر	evaporation
pouch	مياه جوفية	groundwater
shell	فرعون	pharaoh
wildlife	النبل	nobles
trunk	جندي	soldier
branch	كاتب	scribe
breeze	حرفي	artisan
useless	تاجر	trader
chariot	الجنش	the army
society	مسئول	in charge
kingdom	صرائب	taxes
dugong	بضائع	goods
nickname	فئع البحر	sea bed
ostrich	صفا	a float
boring	مزعج	annoying

### Conjugation of verbs

## Irregular verbs

Present	ماضی مضارع	Past	ماضی	Present	ماضی مضارع	Past	ماضی
catch	يُصَاد	caught	صَادَ	give	يُعْطَى	gave	عَاطَى
feed	يُطْعَم	fed	طَعَمَ	become	يُصْبِحُ	became	صَبَحَ
hide	يُخْفَى	hid	خَفَى	rise	يُصْعَدُ	rose	صَعَدَ

## Review

## Language

## Expressing ability in the present

فاعِل + **can** + **inf**      يستطيع أن ...      فاعِل + **can't** + **inf**      لا يستطيع أن ...

For I can swim.

- I can't ride a bike.

هل تستطيع أن؟ Can + ماعل + inf?

Ex: Can you feed the horse?

- Yes, I can.      - No, I can't.

## Expressing ability in the past

لم يستطع أن ...      فاعل + **couldn't + inf**      استطاع أن ...      فاعل + **could + inf**

Ex. She ~~couldn't~~ speak French.

She ~~couldn't~~ climb trees.

Could + فاعل + inf?

Ex: Could he read a book?

- Yes, he could.      - No, he couldn't.

### Talking about the job you would like to do.

فاعل + would ('d) like to be + وظيفة

Ex: She'd like to be a trader because she likes buying and selling.

- يتم استخدام **"when"** كأداة ربط بين جملتين في الماضي البسيط كالآتي:

- I could speak **when** I was six months old.



## General Test on unit 9

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1- Mohamed read about Ancient Egyptian society.
- 2- Scribes were very important in Ancient Egyptian society.
- 3- Scribes trained for two years before they wrote on papyrus.
- 4- Scribes wrote many different things like letters and records.

### 2 Listen and complete.

- 1- Ola went to ..... yesterday.
- 2- Ola saw ..... there.
- 3- Penguins were in a special place inside like a .....
- 4- Ola fed penguins some .....

### 3 Read and match.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1- I couldn't see        | a- move quickly from a place to another. |
| 2- Snails can't          | b- so important?                         |
| 3- The trunk of tree has | c- keeping Egypt safe.                   |
| 4- Why is water          | d- like furniture and chariots.          |
| 5- Soldiers were busy    | e- many green branches.                  |
|                          | f- that boat in the dark.                |

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

This week I'm writing a blog for school about unusual animals. I looked at animals from around the world. My favorite unusual animal lives in the Amazon Rainforest. It's called the emperor tamarin. It's a small monkey. It has a very white beard. It looks like an old man! Its color is grey. Its hands and feet are black. Its tail is brown. It eats insects, fruit and other small animals.

## Review

### A Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The emperor tamarin is from the .....  
a) Amazon Rainforest b) bamboo forest c) zoo d) street
- 2- The underlined word "unusual" means .....  
a) different b) safe c) unsafe d) nice

### B Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does tamarin emperor look like?  
.....
- 4- What does it eat?  
.....

### C Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- sea - nickname - is - Its - cow - the .  
.....
- 2- his - What - is - favorite - animal - unusual ?  
.....
- 3- could - I - write - was - when - I - six .  
.....
- 4- How - can - be - ungrateful - you - so ?  
.....

### D Punctuate the following.

- 1- why was the tree angry .....
- 2- I can t drive a car .....

### E Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The water cycle" (clouds - evaporation)

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Review three

## Review

3

### Main Vocabulary

endangered	معرض للخطر	Negev deserts	صحاري النقب
pets	حيوانات أليفة	extinct	منقرض
meat	لحم	herbivores	أكل الأعشاب
corniche	كورنيش	building	البناء
loss	فقدان	habitat	مسكن/موطن
Egyptian tortoise	السلحفاة المصرية	skin	جلد
poaching	الصيد الجائر	Dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس
farming	الزراعة	wild animals	الحيوانات البرية
population	تعداد	species	فصائل
actions	تصرفات/أفعال	top speed	السرعة القصوى
diet	نظام غذائي	nearly	تقريباً

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	حاضر	Past	ماضي	Present	حاضر	Past	ماضي
exist	يوجد / يعيش	existed	يوجد	destroy	يدمر	destroyed	دمر
protect	يحمي	protected	حما	use	يستخدم	used	استخدم
share	يشارك	shared	شارك	live	يعيش	lived	عاش
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	صطاد	look	ينظر	looked	نظر

#### Irregular verbs

keep	يحتفظ	kept	احتفظ	eat	يأكل	ate	أكل
become	يصبح	became	صار	take	يأخذ	took	أخذ

### Important definitions

**extinct:** If something is extinct, it no longer exists.

منقرض : لو شيئاً ما يكون منقرض أي أنه لم يعد موجود.

**habitat (n):** The place where an animal or plant live.

الموطن : هو المكان الذي يعيش به الحيوان أو النبات.



## Important Expressions

for several reasons

loss of habitat

Its habitat has been destroyed.

hunt for

It's our responsibility to

around 70 species of animals are endangered.

لأسباب عديدة

فقدان الموطن

موطنها قد دُمِر

يصطاد لأجل.....

إنها مسئوليتنا أن.....

حوالي ٧٠ فصيلة من الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض

## Reading

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

If an animal is endangered, it means that it could become extinct. Animals can become endangered for several reasons including loss of habitat, pollution, and poaching. It's our responsibility to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our actions shouldn't hurt wild animals or their habitats. In Egypt, around 70 species of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

إذا كان حيوان معرض للخطر، فهذا يعني أنه يمكن أن يصبح منقرض. يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض لعدة أسباب بما في ذلك فقدان الموطن والتلوث والصيد الجائر. من مسئوليتنا حماية جميع الحيوانات البرية لأننا نتشارك الأرض معهم. يجب ألا تؤذي أفعالنا الحيوانات البرية أو مواطنهم. في مصر، حوالي ٧٠ فصيلة من الحيوانات مهددة بالخطر. هيا نلقي نظرة على اثنين منهم:

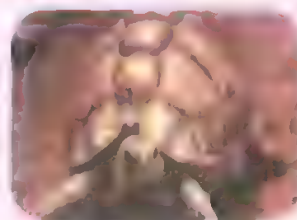
## Egyptian tortoise

## Facts

Population: 7,470.

Can live up to: 50 years.

Top speed: up to 8 kms per hour.



Length: 14.4 cm.

Weight: 160-350 g

Diet: plants and leaves.

السلحفاة المصرية: حقائق

التعداد: ٧٤٧٠. يمكن أن تعيش حتى: ٥٠ عامًا. الطول: ١٤.٤ سم. الوزن: ١٦٠-٣٥٠ جرام. السرعة القصوى: تصل إلى ٨ كيلومترات في الساعة. النظام الغذائي: النباتات وأوراق الشجر.

The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

السلحفاة المصرية هي واحدة من أصغر السلاحف في العالم. إنها تعيش في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا. ومع ذلك، فإن السلحفاة المصرية الآن مهددة بالانقراض. هذا لأن موطنها تم تدميره، ولكن أيضًا لأن الناس يأخذونها من البرية لتربيتها كحيوانات أليفة.

## Dorcas gazelle

## Facts

Population: 1,000-2,000.

Can live up to: 15 years.

Top speed: up to 96 kms per hour.



Length: 90-100 cm.

Weight: 15-20 kg.

Diet: plants and leaves.

غزال دوركاس: حقائق  
التعداد: ١.٠٠٠-٢.٠٠٠. يمكن أن تعيش حتى: ١٥ عامًا. الطول: ٩٠-١٠٠ سم. الوزن: ١٥-٢٠ كجم. السرعة القصوى: تصل إلى ٩٦ كيلومتر في الساعة. النظام الغذائي: النباتات وأوراق الشجر.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Negev deserts. They are herbivores - this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

تعيش غزلان الدوركاس في الصحراء الكبرى وصحاري النقب. إنها حيوانات أكلة للعشب - وهذا يعني أنها تأكل أوراق الشجر والنباتات فقط. تنقرض غزلان دوركاس تقريبًا لسببين رئيسيين: أولاً، يصطادها الناس بحثًا عن لحومهم وجلدهم. ثانيًا، يستخدم المزيد والمزيد من الناس موطنهم للزراعة والبناء.

## Exercises



## Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

- 1- Mai can see .....
- 2- Dorcas gazelle is .....
- 3- Dorcas gazelle is endangered because people ..... them.
- 4- Dorcas gazelle lives in the ..... and Negev deserts.



## Review 3

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1- The Egyptian tortoise is one of | a the Sahara and Negev deserts.        |
| 2- Dorcas gazelles live in         | b the smallest tortoises in the world. |
| 3- If something is extinct,        | c where an animal or plant lives.      |
| 4- Habitat is the place            | d protect all wild animals.            |
| 5- It's our responsibility to      | e plants and leaves.                   |
|                                    | f it no longer exists.                 |

### 3 Read and complete.

( extinct - habitat - kilograms - kilometers - meat - wild )

- 1- People take tortoises from the ..... and keep them as pets.
- 2- The Egyptian tortoise can travel at about eight ..... per hour.
- 3- People hunt the Dorcas gazelle for its ..... and skin.
- 4- The Dorcas gazelle weighs between 15 and 20 .....
- 5- Both the Egyptian tortoise and the Dorcas gazelle are nearly .....
- 6- People are destroying the ..... of the Dorcas gazelle and the Egyptian tortoise.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

In class this week, we're talking about the Egyptian tortoise. The Egyptian tortoise eats plants and leaves. It can live up to 50 years. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

## Review 3

### 1 Choose the correct answer from:

- 1- The main idea is the .....  
a) Egyptian tortoise    b) gazelles    c) cats    d) panda
- 2- It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and .....  
a) Aswan    b) Paris    c) London    d) Libya

### 2 Answer the following questions.

- 3- What does Egyptian tortoise eat?  
.....
- 4- Why is Egyptian tortoise endangered?  
.....

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- only - eat - gazelles - ~~Dorcas~~ - plants - and - leaves .  
.....
- 2- now - is - tortoise - ~~Egyptian~~ - endangered .  
.....
- 3- live up - can - gazelles - ~~Dorcas~~ - to - 15 years .  
.....
- 4- in - endangered - there - ~~Are~~ - animals - Egypt ?  
.....

### 4 Punctuate the following.

- 1 dorcas gazelles are herbivores .....
- 2- What does egyptian tortoise eat .....

### 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " An endangered animal "

اكتب فقره من ٤٠ كلمه عن " حيوان معرض للانقراض "

( What does it eat? - Why is it endangered? )

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Unit ten

## هيا نرور مصر

### Let's visit Egypt

#### Did you know?

Fingert is the oldest fruit in Egypt.  
Archaeologists think it is more  
than 7,000 years old!



## Objectives

### Vocabulary

museum	square	visit a temple
hotel	culture	sail on the Nile
restaurant	shopping mall	monument
store	tourists	painting
market	cuisine	artifact
bank	originally	tomb
beach	on vacation	hieroglyphics
library	play music	evidence
station	bake bread	water carrier
factory	read a book	symbol
monument	make a phone call	

### Language

Use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.

Don't be late tomorrow!

Come here, Lamal!

Go to the end of the street and turn right.

استخدم الامر لإخبار شخص ما أن يفعل شيئاً أو لا يفعله.

لا تتأخر غداً

تعال هنا يا (لاما)!

اذهب إلى نهاية الشارع وانعطف يميناً.

### Reading

Text about a famous Egyptian city.

Text about culture in Ancient Egypt.

Story about the importance of asking for help and being polite.

Paragraph about London and New Alamein.

نص عن مدينة مصرية شهيرة.

نص عن الثقافة في مصر القديمة.

قصة عن أهمية طلب المساعدة والأدب.

فقرة عن لندن والعلمين الجديد.

### Writing

Paragraph about your town or city.

فقرة عن بلدك أو مدينتك.

### Speaking

Talking about places in your town or city.

Giving instructions.

Asking for and giving directions.

التحدث عن أماكن في بلدك أو مدينتك.

إعطاء التعليمات.

طلب وإعطاء الاتجاهات.

### Listening

Vox pops about Alexandria.

استطلاع رأي عن الإسكندرية.

### Phonics

Identify and correctly pronounce diphthongs e.g. /ou/, as in show, /ei/ as in, eight, /oi/ as in toy, /ai/ as in right.

التعرف على الأصوات الممزوجة ونطقها بشكل صحيح على سبيل المثال e.g. /ai/ /oi/ /ei/ /ou/ و



# Lesson 1 We love Alexandria!

## Main Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية



shopping mall  
مركز تسوق



hotel  
فندق



museum  
متحف



station  
محطة



monument  
أثر



square  
ميدان



bank  
بنك



factory  
مصنع

## Vocabulary

## المفردات اللغوية

Alexandria	مدينة الإسكندرية	cuisine	مطبخ / مأكولات
restaurant	مطعم	ingredients	مكونات
store	متجر	originally	أصلاً / في الأصل
market	سوق	summer	فصل الصيف
beach	شاطئ	Barcelona	مدينة برشلونة
tourists	سياح	mix	خليط / مزيج
Germany	دولة ألمانيا	culture	ثقافة
mint tea	شاي بالنعناع	traditions	تقاليد
school trip	رحلة مدرسية	dress	فساتين

Parents' notes

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتكرارها.

# Lesson 1

## Adjectives

## صفات

exciting	مثير	relaxing	هادئ	modern	حديث
cool	رائع	fresh	طازج	excellent	ممتاز

## Conjugation of verbs

## تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Future	مستقبل
chat	يُحَدِّث	chatted	يُذَكِّر	remind of	reminded
serve	يُقدِّم	served	يُسْتَعِير	borrow	borrowed
own	يملك	owned	يُفَضِّل	prefer	preferred

### Irregular verbs

swim	يسبح	swam	show	يعرض / يوضح	showed
------	------	------	------	-------------	--------

## Expressions and prepositions

## التعبيرات وأجزاء الجمل

I haven't been to any yet.  
in the roof garden of hotel  
on vacation  
spend ages

لم أذهب لأي مكان حتي الآن.  
في حديقة سطح الفندق  
في عطلة / إجازة.  
يقضي أعمار (وقت طويل).

## Check your vocab :

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We can have food in the .....  
a) museum      b) library      c) restaurant      d) market
- We can walk around the .....  
a) cuisine      b) shopping mall      c) bank      d) factory

KATRELNADA

Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.

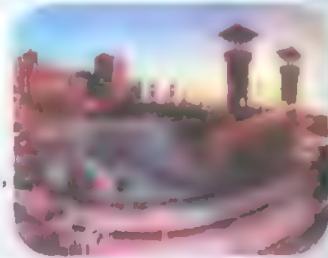
ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.



## Reading : Why we love Alexandria لماذا نحب الإسكندرية!

### Listen and read.

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...



الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة. يوجد الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا إنها مدينة كبيرة بها الكثير من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق، والمتاحف الرائعة. حتى أن هناك شاطئًا! سألنا بعض الناس الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عن رأيهم

**Jens:** I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

جسنس: أنا أرور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. أعتقد أن المكان رائع حقًا هنا. أعتقد أنه يوجد بعض المتاحف الجيدة. لكنني لم أذهب إلى أي منها حتى الآن. أحب مجرد الجلوس في حديقة سطح فندقي، وشرب الشاي بالنعناع المصري الحلو المذاق والدراسة مع الآخرين. إنه مريح للغاية.

**Hanan:** I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

حنان: لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. أنا أملك مطعمًا هنا لذا يجب أن أقول إنه يجب عليك زيارة مطعمي لتجربة بعض المأكولات المحلية. نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة جميلة. لدينا محلات سوبر ماركت ممتازة. لكني أفضل شراء مكوناتي من السوق في المدينة القديمة.

**Kira and Lena:** We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria - the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

كيرا ولينا: نحن من مدينة صغيرة في إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة جدًا هناك. هذا أكثر ما نحبه في الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! نقضي أوقات طويلة في التجول حولهم. نحن نحب الناس. إنهم ودودون للغاية!

**Karim:** I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach - there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

كريم: أنا مصري. أصلًا من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي وأنا أحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل في بنك. مكاني المفضل هو الشاطئ - لا يوجد واحد في القاهرة يمكن أن يصبح الجو حارًا جدًا هنا في الصيف. لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة.

**Paulo:** I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home - a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

باولو: أنا في إجازة هنا من برشلونة. أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرني بالمنزل - مدينة كبيرة وحديثة بالقرب من البحر. أحب مزيج المباني الحديثة والقديمة. أيضًا، أحب أن أكتشف الثقافة والتقاليد. المكتبة مذهلة!

### Answer the following questions.

1- What do Kira and Lena like most in Alexandria?

2- What does Jens do in the roof garden of his hotel?



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Alexandria is a wonderful place to visit.
- Alexandria has bad weather.
- People in Alexandria are so nice and friendly.
- In Barcelona, you can visit the Alexandria Library.

## 2 Listen and complete.

- Dalia was in .....
- Dalia saw lots of amazing ....., stores and museums.
- Dalia ..... to the beach.
- Dalia swam in the .....

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1- My father works         | a- mint tea very much. |
| 2- I like drinking         | b- factory in my town. |
| 3- There's a big           | c- for five hours.     |
| 4- I waited at the station | d- in a bank.          |
| 5- I saw you at            | e- monument.           |
|                            | f- the shopping mall.  |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Reem. I live in Alexandria. Alexandria is on the Mediterranean Sea. My city is a really exciting place. There are many places in Alexandria you can enjoy. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach! My father owns a big restaurant in Alexandria, so I have to say that you must visit our restaurant. We serve Koshari using lovely fresh local ingredients.

## 1 Choose the correct answer.

- Reem lives in .....  
a) Alexandria      b) Cairo      c) Germany      d) Barcelona
- They serve ..... in the restaurant with fresh ingredients.  
a) fish      b) meat      c) koshari      d) chicken

## 2 Answer the following questions.

- What places can you enjoy in Alexandria?
- Where is Alexandria?

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- at - cuisine - serve - We - local - our - restaurant .

- station - a big - is - There - my - town - in .

- you - do - Does - live, - Ramy ?

- Alexandria - visiting - Will - April - in .

## 4 Punctuate the following.

There is a beach in alexandria

## 5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your visit to Alexandria"

كتب مقبره من 40 كلمة عن ..... بك الى الاسكندرية  
( What did you visit? - What did you do? )



## Lesson 2

### Let's find out!

#### Main Vocabulary

#### المفردات الرئيسية



Ancient Egypt

مصر القديمة



artifacts

مقتنيات قديمة



water carrier

حامل ماء



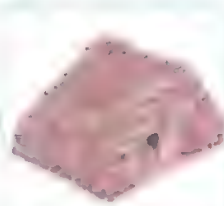
hieroglyphics

الكتابة الصورية



paintings

رسومات



tomb

مقبرة

#### Vocabulary

#### المفردات الإضافية

fact	حقيقة	writing	كتابة
sign	علامة / إشارة	symbol	رمز
clearly	بوضوح	wall	جدار / حائط
true	صحيح / حقيقي	papyrus	ورق البردي
structure	مبنى / بناء	scene	مشهد
daily life	الحياة اليومية	field	حقل
evidence	دليل	occasion	مناسبة
event	حدث / مناسبة	feast	عيد
pharaohs	الفرعون	statue	تمثال
information	معلومات	pot	وعاء / إناء
objects	أشياء	monuments	أبنية

## Lesson 2

### Conjugation of verbs | تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
exist	يوجد	existed	يوجد	bury	يدفن	buried	يدفن
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	يحتفل	die	يموت	died	يموت

#### Words and definitions

#### كلمات و تعريفها

evidence	facts that show something is true	أدلة على شيء ما
monument	a building or a statue	مبنى أو تمثال
artifacts	objects like vases and pots which were made in the past	أشياء مثل الزهريات والأواني التي صنعت في الماضي
Paintings	pictures	صور
tomb	people were buried here when they died	دُفن الناس هنا عندما ماتوا
hieroglyphics	a kind of writing using pictures and symbols	نوع من الكتابة يستخدم الصور والرموز

#### Check your vocab :

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- ..... is facts that show something is true.  
a) Tomb      b) Artificial      c) Evidence      d) Monuments
- ..... were built to celebrate important people.  
a) Monuments      b) Hieroglyphics      c) Paintings      d) Symbols
- What are .....? - They are Ancient Egyptian writings.  
a) water carriers      b) artifacts      c) monuments      d) hieroglyphics



## Reading : Life in Ancient Egypt

### الحياة في مصر القديمة

#### 1. Evidence

#### اقرأ واقرأ.

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.

هناك الكثير من الأدلة التي تخبرنا عن الحياة في مصر القديمة. الأدلة هي حقائق أو علامات تظهر بوضوح أن شيئاً ما موجود أو حقيقي.

We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.



يمكننا التعلم عن المباني القديمة من الآثار القديمة. هذه تماثيل بنيت للاحتفال بالناس المهمين.

**Artifacts** are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.



القطع الأثرية هي أشياء من الحياة اليومية مثل الزهريات وأوعية المياه التي تخبرنا كيف كان يعيش الناس.

**Hieroglyphics** are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.



الهيروغليفية هي كتابة مصرية قديمة من الرموز والصور. من الهيروغليفية يمكننا الحصول على أدلة عن الحياة في مصر القديمة.

**Paintings** are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events.



الرسومات تكون على الجدران أو على ورق البردي. يعرضون مشاهد من الحياة اليومية. مثل المزارعين الذين يعملون في الحقول، أو المناسبات الخاصة. مثل الأعياد والمناسبات الخاصة.

Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.



دفن الفرعون وغيرهم من الأشخاص المهمين في مقابر جميلة احتوت أيضاً على أشياء أخرى اعتقد الناس أنهم قد يحتاجون إليها ومعلومات عن حياتهم.

#### Answer the following questions.

- 1- What do paintings on walls and papyrus show?
- 2- From what can we get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt?

## Exercises

#### 1. Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب T (صحيح) أو F (خطأ).  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Aser is doing a research on the life in Ancient Egypt.
- 2- Ancient Egyptians didn't have a special type of writing.
- 3- Hieroglyphics are only Ancient Egyptians writing pictures.
- 4- From Hieroglyphics, we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

#### 2. Listen and complete.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- It's a .....
- 2- Ancient ..... made this monument.
- 3- Ancient Egyptians made this to ..... important people.
- 4- The monument is ..... and great.



## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1- Tomb                    | a- of writing in Ancient Egypt.                   |
| 2- Hieroglyphics is a kind | b- walls or on papyrus.                           |
| 3- Paintings are on        | c- from daily life like vases and water carriers. |
| 4- Artifacts are things    | d- People were buried here when they died.        |
| 5- Have you seen           | e- any monuments?                                 |
|                            | f- are beautiful.                                 |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

النص وأجب على الأسئلة

Ancient Egypt is one of the most famous civilizations in history. The Ancient Egyptians built huge pyramids, temples and tombs. Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. Their paintings are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the field, or special occasions such as feasts and special events. The Ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics. From hieroglyphics, we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

## 5 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The main idea is .....
- a) Ancient Egypt    b) Alexandria    c) monuments    d) paintings
- 2- The Ancient Egyptians ..... huge pyramids, temples and tombs.
- a) building    b) builds    c) built    d) build

## 1 Answer the following questions.

3- Where were pharaohs buried?  
.....

4- What do the paintings show?  
.....

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- tombs - in - were - Pharaohs - buried - beautiful .  
.....
- 2- Egyptian - Ancient - Hieroglyphics - are - writing - symbols .  
.....
- 3- important - to - were - built - Monuments - celebrate - people .  
.....
- 4- artifacts - seen - you - Have - any ?  
.....

## 3 Punctuate the following.

what are hieroglyphics  
.....

paintings often show scenes of daily life  
.....

## 4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Life in Ancient Egypt "

عن النص أعلاه اكتب فقرة باستخدام الكلمات الإرشادية.

( monuments - tombs )  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



## Vocabulary

Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	inside	داخل
everybody	كل شخص / الجميع	outside	خارج
quietly	بهدوء	answer	إجابة
elevator	مصعد / أسانسير	trash can	سلة مهملات
button	زرار	librarian	أمين مكتبة
shelf	رف	unkind	غير عطوف
unimportant	غير مهم	password	كلمة المرور
late	متأخر		

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
close	يغلق / يغلق	closed	غلق / غلق
push	يدفع / يضغط	pushed	دفع / ضغط
return	يعيد	returned	عاد / عاد
need to	يجب أن	needed to	كان يجب أن

### Irregular verbs

stand up	يقف	stood up	قف / قف
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	فقد / خسر
have to	يجب أن	had to	كان يجب أن

## Expressions and prepositions

Have fun!	استمتع !	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
pick up that trash	التقط هذه القمامة	hurry up	يسرع
wait a moment	انتظر لحظة	miss the train	يفوته القطار
bring your book back	أعد كتابك	be quiet	كن هادئاً
jump up and down	يقفز لأعلى وأسفل	make sure	يتأكد
Lower your voice.	أخفض صوتك.	go upstairs	يصعد لأعلى

## Check your vocab :

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1- You're late. Hurry ..... or you'll miss the train!  
a) down      b) on      c) up      d) in
- 2- Lower your ..... or the librarian will ask us to be quiet.  
a) bike      b) voice      c) time      d) noise

## Reading

Listen, read and role-play.

**Teacher:** OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

المدرس : حسناً يا أطفال نحن هنا الآن. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.

**Reem :** Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?

ريم : واو! هذا مذهش. هل يمكننا الذهاب للداخل؟

**Teacher:** Wait a moment. Is everybody here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.

المدرس : انتظروا لحظة. هل الجميع هنا؟ نعم. حسناً. هيا ندخل.

**Ali :** I'm going first!

علي : أنا ذاهب أولاً!

**Teacher:** Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.

المدرس : لا تجري يا علي امشي بهدوء. هذا مكان مهم جداً.

**Ali :** I'm sorry.

علي : أنا أسف.

**Noha :** Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library?

نهي : هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الأطفال؟

**Teacher:** Yes. Go into the elevator. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up.

المدرس : نعم. ادخلوا المصعد. جيد. تراجعوا. الأبواب تغلق. لا تقفز صعوداً وهبوطاً يا علي! اضغط على الزر الأول يا طارق. عظيم. شكراً لك. نحن في طريقنا للأعلى.



## Imperative

الأمر

- We use imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.

- نستخدم الأمر لإخبار شخصاً القيام أو عدم القيام بعمل شيئاً ما.

- Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject but start with a verb.

- الجمل الأمرية لا تبدأ عادة بفاعل مثل (He They) ، ولكن تبدأ بالفعل.

## Affirmative imperatives

الجمل الأمرية المثبتة

- Affirmative imperatives start with the infinitive.

- الجمل الأمرية المثبتة تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.

Ex: Open the door.

Please pick up that trash. - Put the cake in the oven, please.

- لاحظ أن : يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بـ Please وبعدها الفعل في المصدر أو تنتهي بـ please .

## Negative imperatives

الجمل الأمرية المنفية

- Negative imperatives start with :

- الجمل الأمرية المنفية تبدأ بـ :

Don't + inf

Ex: Don't eat in the library, please. Please, don't waste your time.

## Check your language:

5 Rewrite the sentences with imperatives.

1- You need to drink your water outside.

Drink your water outside.

2- You have to bring your book back in two weeks.

3- You cannot use your mobile phone here.

- لاحظ أن : الأفعال should - can - need to - have to - make sure يمكن حذفهم من الجملة و البدء بالمصدر و الأفعال shouldn't - can't يمكن حذفهم من الجملة و البدء بـ (Don't المصدر) .

## Exercises

1 Listen and complete.

1- The ..... is very cold.

2- Doaa will wear her .....

3- Doaa should take her ..... because it's going to rain.

4- Doaa will ..... her bag.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

قرأ وصل

1 Don't forget to bring

a- to stay healthy.

2 Eat fruits and vegetables

b- book, please.

3 You shouldn't

c- homework, Ramy.

4 Open your

d- in the library.

5 Do your

e- lose your book.

f- your shoes.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص و اجب على الاسئلة

I'm Shady. I went with my friends on a school trip. We went to Alexandria. We visited the Alexandria Library. I couldn't believe my eyes of what I have seen in this place. Our teacher told us to stand in line to go inside. We walked quietly. I chose a good book to read. I needed to drink my orange juice but my teacher said, "Drink your juice outside, Shady". My friend talked with me loudly, but the librarian asked us to be quiet.

4 Choose the correct answer.

1- The text is about the .....

a) bakery      b) school      c) Alexandria Library      d) garden



2- The students walked ..... to go inside the library.

- a) quietly      b) fast      c) quickly      d) noisy

**II Answer the following questions.**

3- What did Shady need to drink?

4- Where did the students go?

**III Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**

في الحمل الآتية

1- and - making - Stop - noise - listen - to me .

2- forget - not - Do - T-shirt - your .

3- dinner - have - Come - and - me - with .

4- are - book - What - you - reading ?

**IV Rewrite the rules with imperative.**

1- You should wear your jacket.

2- You should put the book on the shelf.

3- You cannot run in the library.

4- You shouldn't forget to do your homework.

**V Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم للحمل الآتية

Don't talk loudly, please

return the book to its place

## Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

villager	قروي	the crowds	الحشد / الجمهور
beans	حبوب / فصوليا	creature	مخلوق
fur	بعيد	funny	مضحك
sack	كيس	jerboa	حيوان اليربوع
hills	طائر أبو منجل	sound	صوت
high	عالى	unkindly	بقسوة
land	أرض	rude	وفح
snake	ثعبان	rudely	بوقاحة
foolish	أحمق	completely	بالكامل
lesson	درس	alone	بمفرده
stranger	غريب		

## Conjugation of verbs

بصرف الافعال

## Regular verbs

English	عربي	English	عربي
want	يريد	wanted	رد
recognize	يتعرف	recognized	قرر
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	يعتذر
offer	يعرض	offered	يتصرف
entertain	يسلى	entertained	

## Irregular verbs

begin	يبدأ	began	understand	يفهم	understood
-------	------	-------	------------	------	------------



## Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Are you lost?	هل أنت ضال؟	fly over	يطير فوق
watching him	يراقبه	get dark	تظلم
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	in front of	أمام
ask for their help	يطلب مساعدتهم	go to sleep	يذهب للنوم
walk along the road	يمشي بامتداد الطريق	even if	حتى لو
strange-looking bird	طائر غريب الشكل		

## Check your vocab :

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1- Gabi looks lost. He didn't ..... the road.  
a) sell                      b) recognize                      c) entertain                      d) hear
- 2- Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front ..... him.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) at                      d) of

## Reading : Gabi learns a lesson

## Listen and read.

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, 'Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you.'



ذات يوم، أراد قروي بيع حبوبه في السوق، لكنه لم يستطع المشي بعيداً. قال جمله، جابي، 'اعطني أكياس الفاصوليا - سأخذها إلى السوق من أجلك.'

استمع واقرأ

Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.

سار جابي على طول الطريق. استدار يساراً ثم يمينا ثم يساراً مرة أخرى. سرعان ما لم يتعرف جابي على الطريق.

'Are you lost?' called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird. 'No, I'm not lost,' pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.



هل أنت تائه؟ نادى أبو منجل. لم ير جابي ابداً مثل هذا الطائر الغريب المظهر. تظاهر جابي: «لا، أنا لست تائها». لم يكن جابي يعلم أن أبو منجل يمكن أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. 'You look lost,' said the snake. 'No, I'm not,' said Gabi - again he wasn't telling the truth. 'Anyway, even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs,' he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.



رأى جابي ثعباناً يراقبه من أغصان شجرة. قال الثعبان: 'تبدو تائها'. قال جابي: 'لا، لست كذلك' - مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. قال بقسوة: 'على أي حال، إذا كنت كذلك، لا يمكنك المساعدة - ليس لديك حتى أرجل'. لم يكن جابي يعلم أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم لتسلية الحشود.

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him. 'What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous ears,' he thought to himself.



بدأ يحل الظلام. رأى جابي حيوان صغير على الطريق أمامه. 'يا له من مخلوق مضحك المظهر. انظر إلى تلك الأذان الهائلة.' قال لنفسه.

'Hello,' said the jerboa. 'Do you need any help?' 'No, I don't!' replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders. 'OK, good night then,' called the jerboa.

قال اليربوع: 'مرحباً'. 'هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟' 'لا، لا أريد' أجاب جابي بوقاحة. لم يكن جابي يعلم أن اليربوع يمكنه سماع أصوات تجار السوق. نادى اليربوع قائلاً: 'حسناً، ليلة سعيدة إذن'.



Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.



سرعان ما أصبح الجو مظلمًا تمامًا ومهم جابي أنه بحاجة إلى مساعدة الحيوانات. كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان أسفًا. قرر أن ينام ويعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

- 1- Was Gabi right to behave in this way?
  - a) Yes, because he didn't need help.
  - b) No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
  - c) Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.
- 2- What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
  - a) You shouldn't talk to strangers.
  - b) Being rude is important.
  - c) Asking for help is good.

## Exercises

Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- Gabi didn't know that the ..... could hear the sounds of market traders.
 

a) ibis	b) jerboa	c) camel	d) snake
---------	-----------	----------	----------
- 2- Ibis could ..... high above the land and tell him the way.
 

a) run	b) fly	c) walk	d) play
--------	--------	---------	---------
- 3- Do you ..... any help?
 

a) need	b) needs	c) needed	d) no
---------	----------	-----------	-------
- 4- It began to ..... dark.
 

a) goes	b) has	c) know	d) get
---------	--------	---------	--------

اقرأ وصل.

Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1- The villager wanted to | a- help the villager.            |
| 2- Gabi offered to        | b- because he could hear well.   |
| 3- The jerboa could help  | c- the truth                     |
| 4- Gabi didn't recognize  | d- sell his beans in the market. |
| 5- Gabi wasn't telling    | e- the road.                     |
|                           | f- called the jerboa.            |

Read the text and answer the questions.

Gabi wanted to go to the market. Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. "You look lost," said the snake. "No, I'm not," said Gabi. "Any way even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs." Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

Choose the correct answer.

- 1- Gabi saw a .....
 

a) snake	b) ibis	c) cat	d) dog
----------	---------	--------	--------
- 2- The snake hasn't got .....
 

a) legs	b) eyes	c) body	d) mouth
---------	---------	---------	----------

Answer the following questions.

- 3- Where did Gabi want to go?  
.....
- 4- Why did the snake go to the market every day?  
.....



- The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways.

- الصوت الواحد يمكن كتابته أحياناً بطرق مختلفة.

go

show

below

grow

wrote

make

play

ache

bake

eight

boy

toy

point

coin

enjoy

bite

right

bike

time

write

## Exercises

1 Read and match (A) with (B).

- I have got
- He took a big bite
- I had a
- I saw a coin
- We don't go to school

- of the sandwich.
- stomachache.
- grow vegetables.
- a beautiful bike.
- on Fridays.
- on the ground.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

I and my friends go to the park every Friday. We play football and ride our bikes. We point to the trees and count them. We sometimes grow plants. In this park, I can see ten yellow flowers and eight red roses. One day, we saw a little boy. He was hungry. I gave him a sandwich and he took a big bite of it. My friend also gave him a toy. He was very happy.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1- They go to the ..... every Friday.

- a) park                      b) school                      c) restaurant                      d) zoo

2- They play football and ride their .....

- a) cars                      b) bikes                      c) buses                      d) planes

4 Answer the following questions.

3- What do they do at the park?

4- What did they do to make the boy feel happy?



## Estimate answer الإجابة المقدّرة

- An estimate answer isn't the actual answer.
- It's a good guess.

- الإجابة المقدّرة (المقرّبة) هي ليست الإجابة الفعلية (الحقيقية) ، وإنما هي تخمين جيد لأقرب إجابة.

- We can use these expressions to say it :

- يمكننا استخدام هذه التعبيرات لقولها بمعنى تقريباً أو حوالى :

It's around ..... It's about .....  
It's near ..... It's close to .....

Ex:  $34 + 47 = 81$  →  $80$

(actual answer) (estimated answer)  
الإجابة الفعلية الإجابة المقدّرة

Ex:  $338 + 366 = 704$  →  $700$

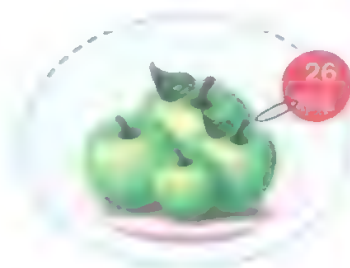
(actual answer) (estimated answer)  
الإجابة الفعلية الإجابة المقدّرة

Ex: What's  $88 + 90 + 27$  ?

- It's around **200**.

Ex: How much will two kilos of apples be ?

- They will be about **50** pounds .



## Exercises

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

I and my mother went to the market to buy some fruits and vegetables. My mom asked the seller about the prices. A kilo of tomatoes was 15 pounds. A kilo of figs was 10 pounds. A kilo of apples was 30 pounds.

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

امرأ واكتب (صح) او (خطأ)

- 1- A kilo of oranges was 30 Egyptian pounds.
- 2- A kilo of figs and a kilo of tomatoes were around 24 pounds.
- 3- A kilo of apples and a kilo of figs were around 60 pounds.
- 4- A kilo of tomatoes was 15 pounds.

3 Read and choose the estimated answer.

- 1-  $55 + 26 =$  .....  
a) 60 b) 80 c) 120
- 2-  $150 + 15 =$  .....  
a) 170 b) 230 c) 320
- 3-  $200 + 17 =$  .....  
a) 300 b) 220 c) 100
- 4-  $88 + 90 + 27 =$  .....  
a) 10 b) 100 c) 200



### Vocabulary

#### المفردات اللغوية

tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي	near	القرب
theater	مسرح	history	التاريخ
bridge	كوبرى	arts	الفنون
description	وصف	waterpark	ملاهي مائية
location	موقع	treasure	كنز

### Adjectives

#### الصفات

famous	مشهور	positive	إيجابي
relaxing	مريح	delicious	لذيذ
large	كبير	beautiful	جميل
fascinating	ساحر / خلاب	perfect	مثالي
free	مجاني	wonderful	رائع
amazing	مدهش	negative	سلبي

### Famous places

#### أماكن مشهورة

Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	New Alamein	مدينة العالمين الجديدة
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	International Park	الحديقة الدولية
River Thames	نهر التايمز	Archaeological Center	المركز الأثري

#### Tip

- When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

- عندما تحاول أن تشجع الناس للذهاب إلى مكان ، استخدم صفات إيجابية لـ وصف المكان.

Parent's notes

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وتكرارها.

### Conjugation of verbs

#### تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
describe	يصف	described	وصف	encourage	يحث	encouraged	حث
bury	يدفن	buried	دفن	laugh	يضحك	laughed	ضحك

### Expressions and prepositions

#### التعابير وال介

It doesn't matter	هذا ليس مهم
a lot of fun things to do	الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة لتفعلها
take a boat trip	ياخذ رحلة بالقارب
plenty of	وفرة من / كثير من
from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم.
write notes about	يدون ملاحظات عن
in the middle	في وسط
all kinds of	جميع أنواع
go for family picnics	يذهب في نزهات عائلية
catch a train	يركب / يلحق قطار
keep your money safely	يحفظ أموالك بأمان

### Check your vocab:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- You can visit amazing tourist ..... in Egypt.  
a) attract      b) attracted      c) attracts      d) attractions
- When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use ..... adjectives.  
a) bad      b) positive      c) negative      d) worse

- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.

- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.



Listen and read.

This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!



هذه هي واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، لكن لا يهم لأن هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك فعلها. يمكنك أن تذهب في حافلة حمراء كبيرة وزيارة أماكن الجذب السياحي. سترى أماكن مشهورة مثل قصر Buckingham والمسارح والمتاحف. يمكنك أيضًا الذهاب في رحلة استجمام على نهر التايمز والذهاب تحت الجسور الشهيرة. كل هذا التجول سيجعلك تشعر بالجوع! لكن لا تقلق. فهناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.

NEW ALAMEIN

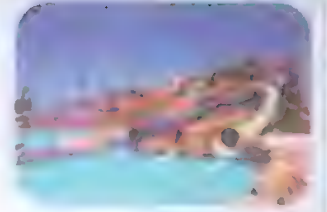
There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.



هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة. تقع المدينة على الشاطئ حتى تتمكن من زيارة البحر الرائع عندما يكون الجو حارًا. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل 14 كم! هناك أيضًا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة في وسط المدينة يمكنك أيضًا زيارة حديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت تريد التعلم عن التاريخ الرائع للمنطقة، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثري. يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة هناك. لا استطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.

Our perfect town

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!



في مدينتنا المثالية، يوجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجانب المدرسة مباشرة. يمكننا الذهاب إلى هناك كل يوم يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات. الجو حار جدًا في بلدنا، لذلك هناك ملاهى مائية مفتوحة دائمًا. إنه مجاني للدخول! هناك سوق رائج يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة، مثل الخبز الطازج والمواكه والخضروات الطازجة. يوجد حديقة كبيرة بها الكثير من الأشجار لذلك يمكننا الذهاب في نزهات عائلية في الظل. هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع وانسب (صحيح) أو (خطأ) نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- London isn't full of sights and nice places.
- 2- Buckingham Palace is in Cairo.
- 3- You can take a relaxing trip on the River Thames.
- 4- London has a number of parks which are amazing.

2 Listen and complete.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Paula went to .....
- 2- Paula saw the ....., the Pyramids of Giza and the Egyptian Museum.
- 3- Paula ..... to Khan EL-Khalili.
- 4- Paulo found many ....., restaurants and cafés in Khan EL-Khalili.



### Read and match (A) with (B).

- 1- You can visit
- 2- It's hot in our town.
- 3- New Alamein is
- 4- There are plenty of
- 5- Buckingham Palace

- a- is in Cairo
- b- restaurants in my city.
- c- is in London
- d- so there is a waterpark that is always open
- e- on the beach.
- f- amazing tourist attractions

### Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص و اجب على الأسئلة

Nubia is one of the most exciting cities in the world. The city is famous for its warm weather. In the city, you will be able to enjoy and have fun. To reach Nubia village from Aswan, the best way would be to take a relaxing boat trip and this will give you the chance to enjoy the Nile and the fresh air. Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places like The Great Temple of Ramses II and Elephantine Island. There are also plenty of different restaurants to choose from.

### Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about .....  
 a) New York      b) Nubia      c) Cairo      d) Aswan
- 2- There are plenty of different ..... to choose from.  
 a) markets      b) libraries      c) cinemas      d) restaurants

### Answer the following questions.

- 3- How can you reach Nubia from Aswan?  
 .....
- 4- What does Nubia have?  
 .....

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- amazing - see - will - You - tourist attractions - in London .  
 .....
- 2- in - International - Park - the - There - is - Alamein - New .  
 .....
- 3- our - is - This - town - perfect .  
 .....
- 4- in - any - there - Are - restaurants - Cairo ?  
 .....
- 5- boat - take - You - relaxing - can - a - trip .  
 .....
- 6- can - Where - go - you - picnics - for - family ?  
 .....

### Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للحمل الآتية

Is the british museum in London?

alexandria is one of the most exciting cities in the world

### Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " New Alamein "

كتب فقرة من 40 كلمة عن "البحر الجديد"

(International Park)

- 5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.
- 6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.
- 7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

- 5- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
- 6- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
- 7- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.



## Review on unit 10

### Important vocabulary

museum	متحف	friendly	ودود
restaurant	مطعم	evidence	دليل
market	سوق	symbol	رمز
bank	بنك	feast	عند
beach	شاطئ	tomb	مقبرة
library	مكتبة	password	كلمة مرور
station	محطة	unimportant	غير مهم
factory	مصنع	location	موقع
monument	نصب	waterpark	ملاهي مائية
square	ميدان	perfect	مثالي
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	positive	إيجابي
cuisine	مطبخ / مأكولات	villager	قروي
originally	أصلاً	sack	كيس
on vacation	في عطلة	branches	فرع الشجر
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية	the crowds	الحشد
fascinating	ساحر / خلاب	jerboa	حيوان البراري
hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية	trader	تاجر
paintings	رسومات	rudely	بوقاحة
tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي	pharaohs	فرعون
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	culture	ثقافة
creature	مخلوق	relaxing	هادئ / مريح
water carrier	وعاء ماء	stranger	غريب
station	محطة	mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
foolish	أحمق		

## Review

### Verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	ماضي	Past	ماضي	Present	ماضي	Past	ماضي
borrow	سأخذ	borrowed	أخذت	bury	دفن	buried	دفنت
own	يملك	owned	ملك	die	موت	died	مات
serve	يقدم	served	قدم	encourage	يشجع	encouraged	شجعت
exist	يوجد	existed	وجد	prefer	يفضل	preferred	فضل

#### Irregular verbs

stand up	يقف	stood up	lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost
----------	-----	----------	------	-------------	------

### Important language

#### Imperative

- تستخدم الجملة الأمرية لإخبار شخصاً ما بالقيام أو عدم القيام بعمل شيئاً ما.

- تبدأ الجملة الأمرية المثبتة بالفعل في المصدر.

- تبدأ الجملة الأمرية المنفية بـ: **Don't + المصدر**

- **Open** your book, please.

- **Don't** forget to bring homework.

## General Test on unit 10

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

(بص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- 1- Amr lives in New York. ☐
- 2- Amr works in a restaurant which serves traditional Egyptian food. ☐
- 3- Alexandria Library is Amr's favorite place. ☐
- 4- Alexandria doesn't have good weather. ☐



## 2 Listen and complete.

- 1- Rania was in .....
- 2- New Alamein is on .....
- 3- A large green lake and Archaeological ..... are in New Alamein.
- 4- There is a beautiful ..... Park in New Alamein.

## 1 Read and match.

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 I turned left and right, but | a is dirty.                               |
| 2 My sister wasn't             | b with your friends.                      |
| 3 Don't be unkind              | c clean.                                  |
| 4 Keep the environment         | d People were buried here when they died. |
| 5 Tomb                         | e I didn't recognize the road.            |
|                                | f telling the truth.                      |

## 4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Yesterday, I went to the Alexandria Library. I walked quietly to go inside. I chose a good book to read. It was about Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians built monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people. They used Hieroglyphics. From hieroglyphics, we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt. Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. They made some artifacts. Artifacts can give us information about their daily life.

## 1 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Ancient Egyptians built .....  
a) monuments    b) towers    c) cars    d) ground
- 2 The underlined word "they" refers to .....  
a) artifacts    b) Ancient Egyptians    c) paintings    d) tombs

## 2 Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why did Ancient Egyptians build monuments?  
.....
- 4- What can artifacts give us?  
.....

## 5 Rearrange the following sentences.

- 1- buried - were - Pharaohs - tombs - in .  
.....
- 2- place - is - Alexandria - visit - to - an - exciting .  
.....
- 3- place - Return - to - book - the - its .  
.....
- 4- Reem - Which - book - is - reading ?  
.....

## 6 Punctuate the following sentences.

- wear your cap, please .....
- what do you visit there .....

7 Write a paragraph of fourteen (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your visit to London"  
(tourist attractions - delicious)

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Unit eleven

## الخروج في الهواء الطلق

### Getting out in the fresh air

#### Did you know?

A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is the Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. You can see the famous colored canyon there.

سافر مع عائلتي في رحلة رائعة في سيناء إلى شبة جزيرة نوويبا. يمكنك رؤية الممشى المشهور هناك.



## Objectives

### Vocabulary

city	badly	stream	hiking shoes	happily	map
hill	brightly	quickly	water bottle	heavily	sunlight
tree	sadly	jerboa	snack	well	exercise
sunglasses	blanket	quickly	sweater	nicely	scientist
desert snail	cactus	hard	leaf	quickly	silence
slowly	tent	carefully	plant	route	tip
fascinating	village	nervously	grass	scarf	nature
tamarisk plant	lock	mainland	palm tree	hat	

### Language

Review of plural nouns, i.e. house - houses, city - cities, leaf - leaves  
مراجعة على الأسماء الجمع مثل منزل - منازل ، مدينة - مدن ، ورقة شجر - أوراق شجر.

Forming adverbs, i.e. slow - slowly, happy - happily,

تكوين الظروف

irregular forms hard - hard, fast - fast, good - well

الأشكال غير المنتظمة للظروف

Review of nouns, adjectives, and adverbs.

مراجعة على الأسماء والصفات والظروف.

Talking about plans and making suggestions

التحدث عن المخطط وتقديم الاقتراحات.

### Reading

Emails about a nature trail weekend

رسائل البريد الإلكتروني حول عطلة نهاية الأسبوع في الممشى الطبيعي

Text about the Red Sea Mountain Trail

نص حول مسار جبل البحر الأحمر

Text messages: making plans for a trip

الرسائل النصية: التخطيط لرحلة

### Writing

Text messages: making plans for a trip

الرسائل النصية: التخطيط لرحلة

### Speaking

Discussion about what to pack on a nature trip

مناقشة حول ما يجب حزمه في رحلة الطبيعة

Discussion about the value of getting out into nature

مناقشة حول قيمة الخروج إلى الطبيعة

Describing a picture using adjectives and adverbs

وصف الصورة باستخدام الصفات والظروف

### Listening

Conversation between three friends deciding what to pack for a nature trip

محادثة بين ثلاثة أصدقاء يقررون

ما يحزمون في رحلة الطبيعة

### Phonics

Correctly pronounce the sounds /n/ (e.g. nose) and /ŋ/ (e.g. sing)

نطق الأصوات /n/ بشكل صحيح



# Lessons 1, 2

## Getting out in nature

الخروج في الطبيعة

### Vocabulary

hill	تل	brave	شجاع
leaf - leaves	ورقة شجر / أوراق شجر	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
feeling	إحساس / شعور	swimmer	سباح
hard	صلب / مجتهد	diver	غواص
trail	ممر / درب	runner	عداء
view	منظر	speaker	متحدث
date	تاريخ	singer	مغني
trip	نزهة / رحلة	designer	مصمم
tortoise	سلحفاة	race	سباق
background	خلفية	hiking / hike	التنزه
canyon	أخدود	nature	الطبيعة

### المفردات اللغوية

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	ماضي	Future	ماضي	Future	Present
guess	يخمن	guessed	dive	يفوق	dived
remember	يتذكر	remembered	check	يفحص	checked
contact	يتواصل مع	contacted	accept	يقبل	accepted
design	يصمم	designed	invite	يدعو	invited

#### Irregular verbs

swim	يسبح	swam	think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought
win	يفوز	won	know	يعرف	knew

### Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Bye for now	وداعاً الآن	sound like	يسو مثل
good for me	جيد بالنسبة لي	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
go on a trail	يذهب للتنزه في ممرات	lived happily	عاش بسعادة

### Notes

تبدأ جمع الاسم المفرد الذي ينتهي بحرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن لحذف (y) و لضيف (ies).  
أو (fe) لحذف و نضع (ves).

life → lives / leaf → leaves

city → cities / baby → babies

## Lessons 1.2

**Natural trail:** A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.

**الممر الطبيعي:** هو مكان نذهب إليه للتنزه في الطبيعة لرؤية كل النباتات والحيوانات.

### Check your vocab



Read and complete.

اقرأ و اكمل.

( hill - grass - village - stream - leaves )

- 1- A ..... is like a river, but smaller.
- 2- I love the feeling of green .....
- 3- A ..... is much smaller than a town or city.
- 4- It's quite difficult to climb that ..... because it's very high.
- 5- That plant has flowers and lots of green .....

### Reading: Natural trail weekend

عطلة نهاية الأسبوع في الممشى الطبيعي

#### Listen and read

From : Dina

To : Reem

Subject: Nature trail weekend

Hi Reem,  
How's life?  
Guess what? My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like? Also, what dates do you prefer, 13-14 July or 20-21 July?  
Bye for now!  
Dina

KATRELNADA

مرحباً ريم . كيف هي حياتك؟ خمنى ماذا؟ أريد أن نذهب للتنزه في ممرات إلى وادي دجلة أو بلو لاجون في دهب. قالت أمي إنني أستطيع أن أأخذ صديقه. وأريد أن أخذك! هل يمكنك أن تأتي؟ قالت أمي لا و انتز يمكننا أن نقرر أيهما أفضل من المكانين. وادي دجلة رائع لأنه يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات . ولكن يمكنك السباحة في بلو لاجون! أعلم أنك تمشي بسرعة وتسبح جيداً. لذا ما هو المسار الطبيعي الذي تفضله؟ أيضاً . ما هي التواريخ التي تفضلها . 13-14 يوليو أو 20-21 يوليو؟ إلى اللقاء دينا



From : Reem  
To : Dina  
Subject: Re: Nature trail weekend

Hi Dina,  
Life's great! How are you?  
The nature trail trip sounds like fun, and I really want to come!  
I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive!  
Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave! Remember when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20-21 July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to check everything.  
Can't wait to see you!  
Reem

مرحباً دينا ،

الحياة رائعة كيف حالك ؟

يبدو رحلة التنزه في ممرات الطبيعة ممتعة ، وأريد حقاً المجيء اعتقد أن بلولاجون مكان جيد لأننا نستطيع السباحة والغوص نعم ، يمكنني السباحة بسرعة ، لكنك شجاعة جداً أتذكرين عندما غطستى من فوق تلك الصخرة ؟ لقد تحدثت للتو مع والدتي وعطلة نهاية الأسبوع ٢٠-٢١ يوليو جيدة بالنسبة لي . سأتصل بوالدتك للتحقق من كل شيء . لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك ! ريم

### Language focus

#### Adjectives

- We use adjectives to give more information about nouns.

- نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأسماء.

Ex: I am a quick runner. - She is a polite speaker.

#### Adverbs

- We use adverbs to give more information about verbs.

- نستخدم الظروف لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأفعال.

- Most adverbs are formed by adding (ly) to an adjective.

- معظم الصفات تتكون بإضافة (يا) للصفة.

bad سي → badly سيئاً quick سريع → quickly بسرعة

Ex: I run quickly. - She speaks politely.

- If the adjective ends in (y), delete the (y) and add (ily).

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (يا) نحذف ال (يا) ونضيف (يايلاً)

happy سعيد → happily بسعادة heavy ثقل → heav

- Irregular adverbs don't end in

good → well hard → hard

fast سريع → fast بسرعة

### Check your language

1 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets.

اعد كتابة الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات بين الأقواس

1- I am a good swimmer.

(well)

I swim well.

2- She is a nice speaker.

(nicely)

3- He is a clever diver.

(cleverly)

4- They teach well.

(good)

2 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- He works (hard - hardly).

2- They speak (loudly - loud).

3- She is (quiet - quietly).

4- He is a (cleverly - clever) designer.



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (صحيح/أو/خطأ).  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Hossam called his friend Adel to go to the Blue Lagoon. ☐
- 2- They can swim and dive. ☐
- 3- They don't do any online researches on the Blue Lagoon. ☐
- 4- There are many rocks so they should be careful. ☐

## 2 Listen and complete.

اقرأ واكمل.

- 1- Jana is a ..... person.
- 2- Jana and Hala can play computer games .....
- 3- They can sing some songs .....
- 4- We are so ..... to be close friends.

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1- Salma runs quickly.    | a- sounds like fun.       |
| 2- Adam drove             | b- go on a trail alone.   |
| 3- The natural trail trip | c- animals in Wadi Degla. |
| 4- Dina wants to          | d- both like swimming.    |
| 5- There are lots of      | e- the car fast.          |
|                           | f- She is a quick runner. |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

At the weekend, my family and I want to go on a nature trail. We can't decide between two places : Wadi Degla or Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. In Nuweiba trail, we can see the famous colored canyon. On the other side, Wadi Degla is cool because we can see lots of animals. It also has a wonderful weather and amazing natural views. Finally, we decided to go to Wadi Degla.

## 1 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- They want to go on a nature .....  
a) travel                      b) trail                      c) desert                      d) zoo
- 2- Nuweiba Trail is in .....  
a) Luxor                      b) Sinai                      c) Aswan                      d) Cairo

## 2 Answer the following questions.

- 3- What can you see on Nuweiba Trail?  
.....
- 4- What do you think of Wadi Degla?  
.....

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أرسل الكلمات لتكوين الجمل الصحيحة.

- 1- She - slowly - down - road - walked - the .  
.....
- 2- are - There - of - lots - animals - Wadi Degla - in .  
.....
- 3- Where - they - go - to - decide - did ?  
.....

## 4 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

salma runs quickly  
Can you speak english well

## 5 Write an email to your friend Ali about "Nature trail weekend".

- Where do you go?

- What can you do there?

From :   
To :   
Subject:

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false.
- 2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.
- 3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.
- 4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

- 1- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع الى النص والإجابة بصحيح أو خطأ.
- 2- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
- 3- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل والتكلمة المناسبة.
- 4- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

- 2- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.
- 3- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.
- 7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

- 5- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
- 6- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
- 7- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.



# Lesson 3

## The Red Sea Mountain Trail

ممر البحر الأحمر الجبلي

### Vocabulary

distance  
mountain  
wonderful  
community  
trading  
hunting  
geography  
scarf  
snack  
sand  
hiking shoes  
sunglasses  
route

المفردات اللغوية  
مسافة  
جبل  
رائع  
مجتمع  
التجارة  
الصيد  
جغرافيا  
وشاح / شال  
وجبة خفيفة  
رمال  
حذاء التزه  
نظارة شمسية  
مسار / ممر

Eastern Desert  
The Maaza  
century  
carefully  
hiker  
fascinating  
blanket  
map  
heat  
tent  
water bottle  
neck

الصحراء الشرقية  
قبيلة المعازة  
قرن (١٠٠ سنة)  
بحرص  
متنزه / متجول  
خلاب  
بطانية  
خريطة  
حرارة  
خيمة  
زجاجة ماء  
نبة

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	ماضى	Past	ماضى	Present	ماضى
open	يفتح	opened	فتح	preserve	يحفظ
follow	يتبع	followed	تبع	complete	يكمل
protect	يحمي	protected	حمى	hike	يتنزه
					hiked

### Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

run for  
take on  
seem to  
take +  
get bright

يبتد  
يحمل  
يسوي  
يستغرق  
يصبح ساطعاً

get hungry  
in case  
such fun  
worried about ...

يصبح جائع  
في حالة  
متنوع جداً  
قلق بشأن

**Note:** hiking: a long walk in the countryside.

## Reading

### Listen and read

استمع واقرأ

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.



كان درب البحر الأحمر الجبلي أول ممر للتنزه لمسافات طويلة تم افتتاحه في مصر. يمتد لحوالي ١٧٠ كم عبر الجبال الرائعة بالقرب من الغردقة. إنه مشروع السياحة المجتمعية. يساعد أهل المعازة المحليين في الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم. يتبع المسار طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة في الصحراء الشرقية. استخدم شعب المعازة هذه الطرق لعدة قرون. إنهم يهتمون بالمسار بعناية ويعملون كمرشدين. يخبرون المتنزهين عن جغرافية وتاريخ هذا المكان الرائع. كما يخبرون المتنزهين عن ثقافتهم الرائعة. تستغرق التزه حوالي عشرة أيام لإكمال المسار.

### Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية

1- Who are the Maaza people?

2- How long is the trail?

3- What does the trail follow?

4- What do the Maaza people do?



## Listen, read and role-play.

**Interviewer:** Hi Sherif, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبا بشريف، ماذا ستأخذ في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

**Sherif:** Hi! Well, I want to protect my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over! I'm also going to take some snacks from home so I don't get hungry.

شريف: مرحبا! حسنا، أريد حماية قدمي لذلك أنا سأأخذ بعض أحذية التزه. أعلم أن هناك الكثير من التلال والصخور لذا لا أريد أن أسقطا سأأخذ أيضا بعض الوجبات الخفيفة من المنزل حتى لا أجوع.

**Interviewer:** Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبا رامى، ماذا ستأخذ في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

**Ramy:** My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

رامى: قال صديقي أن الجو يصبح حارًا جدًا على الطريق في الأماكن التي لا يوجد بها تيارات، لذلك سأأخذ قبعة لرأسي. سأأخذ بطانية أيضًا في حال شعرت بالبرد في الليل.

**Interviewer:** Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبا لاما، ماذا ستأخذين في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

**Lama:** Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles - I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be prepared.

لاما: أخبرني شخص ما أنه يمكن أحيانًا أن تدخل الرمال في عينيك في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي، لذلك سأأخذ وشاحًا لحماية رأسي وعيني. الشيء الآخر المهم بالنسبة لي هو أخذ الكثير من زجاجات المياه - يبدو أنني أشرب أكثر من الآخرين لذلك أريد أن أكون مستعدة.

**Interviewer:** Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبا نسمة، ماذا ستأخذين في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

**Nesma:** I love checking the route so I'm taking a map. And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

نسمة: أحب التحقق من الطريق لذلك سأأخذ خريطة. وسأأخذ نظارتي الشمسية الرائعة أيضًا لحماية عيني. سيكون الأمر ممتعًا للغاية.

## Read and complete.

اقرأ واكمل.

(snacks - scarf - sunglasses - water bottle - map - blanket)

- 1- I get thirsty when I hike, so I always take a .....
- 2- The sun can get very bright on the walk, so take ..... to protect your eyes.
- 3- Shaza is really good at reading the ..... to tell us where to go.
- 4- There's a wind in the afternoon, so you should take a ..... to protect your head and neck.
- 5- I get hungry when I hike, so I always take .....
- 6- I get cold at night, so I'm going to take a .....

## Exercises

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ  
بص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Eman is going on the Blue Lagoon Trail . ☐
- 2- Eman takes one water bottle because she gets thirsty when she hikes. ☐
- 3- Eman takes a blanket because she sometimes feels hungry. ☐
- 4- Eman uses a map to help her when she hikes. ☐



# 1 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد الكلمات لتكوين الجمل الصحيحة.

- 1- What - Red - the - Sea - Trail - is - Mountain ?
- 2- Maaza - used - these - routes - ~~the~~ - people - centuries - for .
- 3- is - good - ~~Shaza~~ - really - at - map - reading - the .
- 4- sand - ~~You~~ - get - in - can - eyes - your .

# 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 1- Who's worried about | a- I use hiking shoes to protect my feet. |
| 2- I use my sunglasses | b- to help you where to go.               |
| 3- Who looks           | c- after the trail?                       |
| 4- This is a map       | d- this is a water bottle.                |
| 5- When I hike,        | e- to protect my eyes.                    |
|                        | f- the heat?                              |

# 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I'm doing some researches on natural trails around the world. One of these natural trails is the Red Sea Mountain Trail. It's an amazing trail near Hurghada. It's a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people work as guides to help the hikers. It takes ten days to complete the trail. I'm so surprised!

# 1 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- The text is about ..... Trail.  
a) Red Sea Mountain b) Nuweiba c) Hurghada d) desert
- 2- It's an amazing trail near .....  
a) Aswan b) Hurghada c) Luxor d) Damietta

# 2 Answer the following questions.

- 3- Why do you think the Red Sea Mountain Trail is important?
- 4- What do the Maaza people do?

# 3 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية

who is worried about their feet

i use a scarf to protect my neck

# 4 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "درب جبال البحر الاحمر".

( hikers – the Maaza people )

- 1- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.
- 2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.
- 3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

- ١- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
- ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
- ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

- 5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them.
- 6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

- ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
- ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.



# Lesson 4 (A) Word building

## Parts of speech

## أجزاء الكلام

### 1- Noun (n)

### الإسم

- It's a word that indicates a person, animal, plant, thing, place ....  
- الإسم هو كلمة تدل على إنسان أو حيوان أو نبات أو شيء أو مكان.  
(teacher - lion - sunflower - board - school)

### 2- Adjective (adj)

### الصفة

- It's a word that gives information about nouns.  
- الصفة هي كلمة تعطي معلومات عن الأسماء.  
(happy - good - beautiful - nice - quiet)

### 3- Adverb (adv)

### الظرف

- It's a word that gives information about verbs.  
- الظرف هو كلمة تعطي معلومات عن الأفعال.  
(early - hard - slowly - cleverly)

**Note:** Sometimes we add (ful) to a noun to make the adjective.

help → helpful - أحياناً نضيف المقطع (ful) للأسم لعمل الصفة.

Sometimes we add (ly) to the adjective to make adverb.

helpful → helpfully - أحياناً نضيف المقطع (ly) للصفة لعمل الظرف.

Noun (N)		Adjective (adj)		Adverb (adv)	
help	معدونة	helpful	متعاون	helpfully	بتعاون
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بجمال
care	حرص	careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص
thought	فكر	thoughtful	عميق التفكير	thoughtfully	بتفكير عميق
stress	توتر	stressful	متوتر	stressfully	بتوتر
meaning	معنى	meaningful	ذو معنى	meaningfully	بشكل مفهوم
wonder	عجب	wonderful	رائع	wonderfully	بروعة
joy	متعة	joyful	ممتع	joyfully	بشكل ممتع
hope	أمل / تفاؤل	hopeful	متفائل	hopefully	بتفاؤل
pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم	painfully	بشكل مؤلم

Parents notes:  
Help the student to learn the parts of speech.  
Help the student to read the words in the table.

176

- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم أجزاء الكلام.  
- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الكلمات في الجدول.

# Lesson 4

## Correct the underlined words.

صحح ما تحته خط.

- 1- It was the most wonderfully bird I saw on the trial. ( )
- 2- The cat was hungrily. ( )
- 3- There's so much natural beautiful in the Red Sea. ( )
- 4- She lived happy in her town. ( )

## Exercises

### 1 Listen and complete.

مع وسمي.  
استمع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Last Monday, she went to the .....
- 2- She could see ..... parrots.
- 3- She could feed the turtle which was walking so .....
- 4- She could play with a white rabbit which was standing .....

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| a I can see           | f when I ride my bike.         |
| b The cat ate         | g the wind and the sand?       |
| c She sang            | h beautifully during the show. |
| d I am very careful   | i wonderful.                   |
| e Who's worried about | j hungrily from the bowl.      |
|                       | k beautiful birds singing.     |

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد التلميذ الجمل.

- 1- the - ate - cat - bowl - the - hungrily - from .  
.....
- 2- can - see - a - ? - brown - rabbit - quietly - standing .  
.....
- 3- sing - he - beautifully - the - the - show - during ?  
.....

Help the student to read the sentences and correct the words.

Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.

Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.

Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence.

- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل وتصحيح الكلمات.  
1- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وإكمال الجمل.  
2- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة.  
3- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

177



4- ~~He~~ - see - can - wonderful - singing - birds .

**D** Read the text and answer the questions.

أ البص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I and my family went on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. The Red Sea Trail is exciting and beautiful. It took 4 hours. We sang beautifully during the trail. I felt so thirsty, so I drank a lot of water. My brother was so tired so he walked so slowly. But, we all enjoyed. We hoped to go to there again.

**A** Choose the correct answer.

1- They went to the 'Red Sea ..... Trail.

- a) Hill                      b) Mountain                      c) Lake                      d) Sea

2- The Red Sea Mountain Trail is exciting and .....

- a) bad                      b) carefully                      c) beautiful                      d) boring

**D** Answer the following questions.

3- What did they do during the Trail?

4- Why did his brother walk so slowly?

**D** Punctuate the following.

The red sea Mountain trail is very exciting.

**D** Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following

guiding elements about: "Parrots" اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "البغايات".

( beautiful – hugrily )

Parents' notes

178

4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

5- Help the student to read the sentence and punctuate it.

6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements.

١- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجملة ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.

### The sound /n/ and /ŋ/

- The sounds /n/ and /ŋ/ sound similar but are pronounced differently.

- الصوتين /n/ و /ŋ/ يبدوان متشابهان لكنهم ينطقان بطريقة مختلفة.

1- You make the /n/ sound by blocking the air in your mouth with the front of your tongue, as in "nose".

- تنطق صوت /n/ عن طريق حجز الهواء في الفم بمقدمة اللسان مثل كلمة "nose".

2- You make the /ŋ/ sound by blocking the air in your mouth with the back of your tongue, as in "sing".

- تنطق صوت /ŋ/ عن طريق حجز الهواء في الفم بأخر اللسان مثل كلمة "sing".

/ n /		/ ŋ /	
nose	أنف	sing	يغنى
know	يعرف	bang	نبطة / فرقة
and	و	king	ملك
natural	طبيعي	think	يعتقد
phone	هاتف	tongue	لسان
ton	طن	ring	حاتم
		wearing	يرتدي
		finger	اصبع
		rang	لن
		looking	ينظر

Help the student to know the difference between the two sounds.

- ساعد التلميذ في معرفة الفرق بين الصوتين.

179



## 1 Listen and put the words in the suitable category.

استمع وضع في الفئة المناسبة.

(hiking - natural - ton - finger - nose - know - tongue - think)

/n/	/ŋ/
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

## 2 Complete the poem with the words in the box.

(bang - ring - ton - rang - kring - sun)

أكمل القصيدة.

1- I can see a .....

2- He's wearing a big .....

3- He's not looking at the .....

4- He thinks it weighs a .....

5- Then the phone .....

6- And he heard a big .....



أكمل القصيدة.

## D Write a sentence on each word

1- wearing .....

2- singing .....

3- her neck .....

4- rang .....

5- bang .....



## Adding mixed numbers جمع الأعداد الكسرية

Mixed numbers: are numbers which are whole numbers and fractions.

الأعداد الكسرية هي الأعداد التي تتكون من أعداد صحيحة وكسور.

$$2\frac{1}{4} \quad / \quad 1\frac{1}{2} \quad / \quad 6\frac{2}{4}$$

$$3\frac{1}{4} \quad + \quad 2\frac{3}{4}$$

To add these numbers together:

- First, add the whole numbers:

أولاً، أضف الأعداد الصحيحة معاً.

$$3 + 2 = 5$$

- Next, add the fractions together:

ثم أضف الكسور معاً.

$$\frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4} = \frac{4}{4} = 1$$

- Add these numbers to the whole number 5 and the total is 6:

أضف الأعداد مع العدد الصحيح.

$$3\frac{1}{4} + 2\frac{1}{4} = 6$$

A trail is  $4\frac{1}{2}$  kilometers long and another is  $6\frac{1}{2}$  kilometers long. How long are they in total?

$$4\frac{1}{2} + 6\frac{1}{2} = 10 + 1 = 11$$

- They are 11 in total.

الاجابة:



## Add the mixed numbers.

اجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

$$* 2\frac{1}{3} + 3\frac{1}{3} = \dots\dots\dots$$

$$* 5\frac{1}{6} + 4\frac{4}{6} = \dots\dots\dots$$

$$* 3\frac{4}{6} + 6\frac{1}{6} = \dots\dots\dots$$

$$* 2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5} = \dots\dots\dots$$

## Answer the word problems.

أجب عن المسائل الكلامية.

- \* Jana walks for  $3\frac{5}{10}$  kms. She stops to wear the sunglasses to protect her eyes. Then, she walks for another  $2\frac{3}{10}$  kms.

How long has Jana walked in total?

- \* One nature trail is  $3\frac{5}{7}$  kilometers long and another nature trail is  $2\frac{5}{7}$  kilometers long. How long are the nature trails in total?

## Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

conversation  
free  
milkshake  
do the crossword  
on the weekend  
do a desert hike  
palm tree

محادثة  
غير مشغول  
حليب مخفوق  
يحل الكلمات المتقاطعة  
في عطلة الأسبوع  
تقوم التسلق في الصحراء  
نخلة

value  
cactus  
jerboa  
science  
pick you up  
Good idea!  
cafe

محادثة  
تسلق  
جولان الصحراء  
علوم  
أحداث  
فكرة جيدة  
قهوة

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
include	يشمل	included	شمل	score	يحز	scored	حاز

## Language focus

## Making suggestions

عمل اقتراح

- نستخدم إحدى التعبيرات الآتية عند عمل اقتراح

هيا بنا .... . مصدر الفعل Let's + inf

Ex: Let's meet on Friday.

How about / What about + (n / v.ing) ?

Ex: What about meeting on Friday?  
How about me coming to your house?

ماذا عن مجيئي لمقابلتك؟

## Accepting suggestion

قبول الاقتراح

That sounds like fun! يبدو ممتعاً! Cool!  
That sounds great fun! يبدو رائعاً! Awesome!

رائع!  
ممتع!



## Phrases to use for text messages

Are you free on the weekend?  
Do you want to .....?  
Should we pick you up?  
How are things? = How are you?

تعبيرات تستخدم في الرسائل النصية

هل أنت غير مشغول في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟  
هل تريد أن .....؟  
هل يجب أن نصطحبك؟  
كيف حالت؟

## Writing: Text message conversation

Hi Malak! Are you free  
on the weekend? ●

I'm good, thanks. Sure!  
What should we do?

My mom and dad want to do a desert  
hike. Do you want to come? 🌵

Yes, that sounds like fun! ●

Great, should we pick you up? we  
don't want to go when it's too hot.

How about me coming to your house?

Good idea!

What should I bring?

Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater. 🧥

OK!

Great! Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm?

Can't wait!



Parents notes

## Exercises

## 1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Omar and Waleed want to have .....
- 2- They will go to a .....
- 3- They will go to the restaurant on .....
- 4- They will eat meat and drink .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

- |                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1- Do you want    | a- coming to your house?        |
| 2- My mom and dad | b- A swimming area.             |
| 3- I should bring | c- on the weekend?              |
| 4- Are you free   | d- hiking shoes, and a sweater. |
| 5- How about me   | e- want to do a desert hike.    |
|                   | f- space to do exercise?        |

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

On the weekend, we decide to get out into nature. Getting out into nature has many pros for hikers. The nature gives the hikers quiet areas. The trail has ancient trading and hunting routes for many hikers. The hikers also discover some fascinating cultures. They can also see some unusual animals like desert snails and jerboa. That sounds wonderful!

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- They decide to get out into the .....  
a) zoo      b) museum      c) nature      d) street

KATREINADA

1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.

2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.

3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

1- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.  
2- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.  
3- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.



## Unit 11

2- The underlined word "fascinating" means .....

- ☐ interesting ☐ boring ☐ tiring ☐ hard

**Answer the following questions.**

3- What does the nature give the hikers?

4- What can the hikers see?

**Reorder the following sentences.**

1- on - Are - free - the - you - weekend ?

2- want - I - get - to - milkshake - a .

3- My mom - want - hike - a desert - dad - and - to - do .

4- about - watching - that - movie - the - tonight ?

**Punctuate the following.**

do you want to come  
that sounds like fun

**Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The nature trail"**

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "مسار الطبيعة".

- What can you see on your nature trail?

- What will you take?

## Review on unit 11

### Important vocabulary

hill	جبل	mountain	جبل
trail	مسار	community	مجتمع
view	منظر	trading	التجارة
brave	شجاع	hunting	الصيد
weekend	عطلة نهاية الاسبوع	geography	جغرافيا
swimmer	سباح	scarf	وشاح
designer	مصمم	snack	وجبة خفيفة
hiking	التزه	sand	رمل
nature	الطبيعة	route	طريق
distance	مسافة	century	قرن
hiker	متزه	carefully	بحرص
blanket	بطانية	map	خريطة
hopeful	متفائل	painful	ألم
hopefully	بتفاؤل	painfully	بشكل مؤلم
tongue	لسان	ton	طن
bang	فرقة	milkshake	مخفوق اللبن
crossword	كلمات متقاطعة	cactus	صبار
jerboa	حيوان اليربوع	free	غير مشغول

### Verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
win	يفوز	won	فاز	know	يعرف	knew	عرف

#### Irregular verbs

include	يتضمن	included	شمل	score	يحقق	scored	حقق
---------	-------	----------	-----	-------	------	--------	-----



## Unit 11

### Important language

#### Adjectives :

- نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الاسماء.

- She is a **good** swimmer.

#### Adverbs :

- نستخدم الظروف لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأفعال ويتكون بإضافة (يا) للصفة.

- The tourists walks **slowly**.

- She plays the piano **beautifully**.

- The cat ate **hungrily** from the bowl.

#### Making suggestions

- نستخدم إحدى التعبيرات الآتية عند عمل الاقتراح.

Let's + (inf) .....

How about + (v.ing) .....?

What about + (v.ing) .....?

- Let's go on a trip.

- **How about** going on a trip?

**That sounds** good.

## General Test on unit 11

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1- They decided to go on sea trip. ☐

2- A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is Nuweiba Trail. ☐

3- Nuweiba Trail is in the western part of Sinai. ☐

4- You can see the famous colored canyon in Nuweiba Trail. ☐

## Review

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 2 Listen and complete.

1- He saw many ..... animals.

2- The tortoise walked ..... across the grass.

3- He could see ..... birds singing.

4- He could see a grey elephant standing .....

### 3 Read and match A with B.

1- It was the most wonderful

a- She is a quick runner.

2- I get thirsty when I hike,

b- He designs well.

3- Salma runs quickly.

c- when I ride my bike on the road.

4- I am very careful

d- thank you very much.

5- Hatem is a clever designer.

e- so I always take a water bottle.

f- bird I saw on the trail.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I and my friends think about a special thing to do next weekend. We want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla, so we are doing a research on this place. We found that it is a cool place. We can see a lot of animals like the desert snail and jerboa. We can also see many wonderful plants like cactus, tamarisk plants and palm trees. We can also see many fossils in the rocks. It's an amazing place!

### 5 Choose the correct answer from.

1- The text is about .....

a) Wadi Degla      b) Blue Lagoon      c) sea      d) animals

2- We can see animals like the desert snail and .....

a) kangaroo      b) lion      c) penguin      d) jerboa



## Unit 11

**4** Answer the following questions.

3- Where is Wadi Degla?

What plants can you see there?

**5** Reorder the following.

1- Does - want - on - Dina - to - go - alone - a trail ?

2- should - take - a - protect - to - scarf - We - necks - our .

3- It - opened - door - the - man - nervously .

4- we - Should - pick - up - 7 - you - at ?

**6** Punctuate the following.

reem wrote the email to dina first.

would you like to go on hiking vacation

**7** Write an e-mail of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about "Nature trail weekend".

( the Blue Lagoon - swim and dive )

## Unit twelve

عطلات

### Vacations

#### Did you know?

Egypt is one of the most popular vacation destinations in the world. Millions of people visit Egypt every year.





## Vocabulary

hotel	passport	huge
pool	suitcase	ticket
tourist	beach	camera
city	museum	sunglasses
theme park	natural	man-made
stone	plastic	sunlight
gold	sand	galabeya
leather	bread	fruit
crops	grain	basket
reeds	rain	river
well	lake	water
pump	stream	tap
ocean	groundwater	surface water
desert	land	materials
nutrient	traditional	daytrip
capital	wander	handicrafts
stall		

## Language

Dependence of time on Mondays / my birthday, at 8 pm  
lunchtime, in June / 2010  
The dangerous battle (e.g. creative, expensive)  
(dangerous, famous) and -ive (e.g. creative, expensive)

## Reading

Email about a vacation.  
Short texts about natural and man-made resources.  
Text about freshwater source.  
Text about a trip to Jordan.  
Diary entry about a trip.

## Writing

Diary entry about a day when you did something special  
لديني يوميات عن يوم قمت فيه بشيء مميز

## Speaking

Talking about a place you would like to visit.  
Talking about things to do on vacation.  
Talking about things you do at different times of the day.

## Listening

About natural resources.  
Short dialogs about plans for different times of the day.

## Phonics

Correctly pronounce the sounds /θ/ (e.g. thing) and /ð/ (e.g. these).  
تفريق الأصوات /θ/ مثل thing و /ð/ مثل these

## Lesson 1

## A world trip

## رحلة عالمية

## Vocabulary

business trip	رحلة تجارية / عمل	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
Singapore	سنغافورة	husband	زوج
airport	مطار	aloud	بصوت عال
suitcase	حقيرة سفر	daughter	ابنه
island	جزيرة	son	ابن
ticket	تذكرة	luckily	لحسن الحظ
Bay	خليج	hotel room	حجرة فندق
passport	جواز سفر	floor	طابق
high-rise building	مبنى شاهق	huge	ضخم
flight	رحلة جوية	busy	مشغول
theme park	مدينة ملاهي	Japan	اليابان
vanilla	فانيليا	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
camera	كاميرا		

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

Present	Future	Present	Future
receive	received	arrive	arrived
relax	relaxed	believe	believed

## Irregular verbs

forget	forgot	send	sent
fly	flew	sleep	slept

## Expressions and prepositions

Can you believe it?	هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟	straight away	فورا / فوراً
took about six hours	استغرق حوالي 6 ساعات	stay at	بقي في
take photos	لتقط صور	on a trip	في رحلة



## Check your vocab

## Choose the correct answer.

- 1- You can swim in the .....  
 a) zoo      b) park      c) swimming pool      d) theme park
- 2- You can travel by plane through the .....  
 a) station      b) airport      c) museum      d) garden
- 3- I like ..... and chocolate ice cream.  
 a) vanilla      b) suitcase      c) ticket      d) hotel

## Reading

## Listen and read.

## استمع واقرأ.

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



تلقت أمي اليوم رسالة بريد إلكتروني من أختها نادية وزوجها هاني. إنهم في رحلة عمل يسافرون حول العالم. نادية وهاني كانوا في الهند الأسبوع الماضي. وهذا الأسبوع هم في سنغافورة. تقرأ أمي البريد الإلكتروني بصوت عالٍ لابنتها رنا وابنها علي.

From : Nadia@mail.com  
 To : Samia@mail.com  
 Subject : My trip

Dear Samia,  
 Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here - about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42<sup>nd</sup> floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach.

عزيزتي سامية،  
 مرحبا بكم جميعا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالي 36 درجة. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندق جميلة. نحن في الطابق 42. المظهر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ.

There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases straight away.

يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالي ست ساعات. لكنها كانت مريحة ونمنا كلانا. لم يستغرق عبور المطار وقتاً طويلاً عندما وصلنا - لقد حصلنا على حقائبنا على الفور.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. يوجد الكثير من المباني الشاهقة. ولكن يوجد أيضاً العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس والاسترخاء تحتها. الحدائق بجوار الخليج مكان مميز جداً حيث يوجد بها زهور ونباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد قضينا الكثير من الوقت هناك. تنسى فعلاً أنك في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

بالأمس، ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى جزيرة. يوجد مدينة ملاهي. إنه أمر ممتع! بعد ذلك قمنا بزيارة متحف الآيس كريم! تناولت آيس كريم "ملكة النحل" وهو عبارة عن فانيليا وعسل بالشوكولاتة. كان رائعاً!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!

Love,  
 Nadia

أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعاً بخير. سنطير إلى اليابان غداً وسأرسل إليك بريداً إلكترونياً آخر عندما نصل. الآن عليّ أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى.  
 بكل الحب.  
 نادية

## Answer the questions.

- 1- Where did Nadia send the email from?  
 .....
- 2- Why is Singapore a wonderful city?  
 .....



## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- There are lots of high-rise buildings in Singapore. ☐
- 2- There aren't any parks and gardens in Singapore. ☐
- 3- In the Gardens by the Bay, there are flowers from all around the world. ☐
- 4- There isn't a theme park. ☐

## 2 Listen and complete.

- 1- The next trip will be to ..... city.
- 2- Singapore is a ..... city in Asia.
- 3- You can go to the Gardens by the .....
- 4- You can go on a ..... trip to an island.

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1- I need to find my passport | a- a theme park.         |
| 2- In my town there is        | b- hotel room.           |
| 3- I've got a lovely          | c- a boat trip.          |
| 4- We went on                 | d- New York next week.   |
| 5- We'll fly to               | e- It's hot.             |
|                               | f- I'll travel tomorrow. |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

From : Samar@mail.com  
To : Noha@mail.com  
subject: My trip

Dear Noha,  
I'm very happy to write to you this email. We will go to Paris. We need to pack our suitcases and find our tickets and passports. I can't wait. I'd like to visit Paris because of the nice and wonderful places there. We'll have got a lovely hotel room. We'll be on the 42<sup>nd</sup> floor.

The view will be amazing. We will see the Eiffel Tower. Paris is famous for having many bakeries with croissants. I would like to try all kinds of food in Paris. I'll take many beautiful photos with my camera.

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1- They will go to .....  
a) London      b) Paris      c) Cairo      d) Aswan
- 2- He'll take many beautiful photos with his .....  
a) camera      b) passport      c) tickets      d) shoes

## 6 Answer the following questions.

1- What do they need to do before going to Paris?  
.....

2- What is Paris famous for?  
.....

## 7 Reorder the words to make sentences.

1- find - to - has - Rania - ticket - her .  
.....

2- to - fly - will - We - London - week - next .  
.....

3- city - a - is - Singapore - wonderful .  
.....

4- go - you - Will - to - Alexandria ?  
.....

## 8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم في الجمل التالية

where do you go on your vacation  
.....

we've got a lovely house.  
.....



### Vocabulary

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	man-made resources	موارد بشرية
materials	مواد خام	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
nature	الطبيعة	gold	ذهب
stone	حجر	bicycle	دراجة
humans	البشر	galabeya	جلبان
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيك	leather shoes	حذاء جلد
cotton clothes	ملابس قطن	lucky	مستطير
plate	طبق	fertile	خصب
grain	حبوب	crops	محاصيل
basket	سلة	reed	قصب - بوص
umbrella	شمسية	at the market	في السوق

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
boil	boiled	harvest	harvested

#### Irregular verbs

wake up	woke up	put on	put on
shine	shone	eat	ate

### Expressions and prepositions

example of	مثال
banks of the Nile	سواحل النيل
go on vacation	يذهب في عطلة
near the sea	بالقرب من البحر

### Definitions

#### تعريفات

**Natural resources** are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.  
الموارد الطبيعية هي مواد خام أو أشياء يمكن أن نجدها في الطبيعة. الأشجار والأحجار أمثلة للموارد الطبيعية.

**Man-made resources** are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.  
الموارد البشرية هي مواد خام أو أشياء صنعها الإنسان. الزجاجات البلاستيك والملابس القطنية أمثلة للموارد البشرية.

### Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The ..... is an example of natural resources.  
a) bicycle      b) stone      c) basket      d) galabeya
- The ..... are examples of man-made resources.  
a) sunlight      b) gold      c) water      d) shoes

Read the words and put them in the correct category:

( sunlight - gold - sand - plastic bottles - stone - plants )

Natural resources	Man-made resources



## Reading

### - Listen and read.

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

فاروق مزارع في أسوان. كل صباح، يستيقظ ويرتدي جلبابه وحذاءه الجلدي. يعلّي بعض الماء من أجل الشاي وياكل بعض الخبز والفاكهة.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops.

Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.

لأن فاروق يعيش في أسوان، فهو يعلم أن الشمس تشرق في معظم الأيام. إنه محظوظ لأنه يعيش على ضفاف النيل الخصبة حتى يتمكن من استخدام الماء لمحاصيله. اليوم يحصد فاروق الحبوب ويضعها في سلال مصنوعة من البوص ويأخذها لبيعها في السوق.



Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.



ريم ستذهب في إجازة. إنها ستسافر إلى كندا بالطائرة. اليوم، هي ستحزم حقبتها. إنها تعلم أنها غالباً ستمطر في كندا، لذا فهي ستأخذ شمسيتها. يمكن أن يكون الجو بارداً أيضاً هناك، لذا فهي ستحزم سترة. تحب ريم السباحة وسألت صديقتها في كندا عما إذا كان هناك مكان يمكنها السباحة فيه. قالت صديقتها إنها لا تعيش بالقرب من البحر، لكنها تستطيع السباحة في نهر أو بحيرة إذا أرادت ذلك.

### Answer the questions.

الأسئلة

- 1- Why is Reem packing a sweater? .....
- 2- How is Reem travelling to Canada? .....

## Exercises

### Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1- Natural resources are created by humans.
- 2- Water, wind and air are natural resources.
- 3- Wood, rocks and clay are also natural resources found on Earth.
- 4- Animals don't create natural resources such as milk.

### Listen and complete.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Mai's father is a .....
- 2- Mai's father grow ....., onions and mangoes.
- 3- He ..... the grain.
- 4- The baskets are made from .....

### Read and match (A) with (B):

امراً وصل.

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1- Mona is going            | a- I'll pack my umbrella.  |
| 2- It's going to rain, so   | b- on vacation.            |
| 3- I live near              | c- are natural resources.  |
| 4- Trees, stone and water   | d- the sea.                |
| 5- Glass, paper and plastic | e- are man-made resources. |
|                             | f- is a farmer.            |

### Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واكتب على الأسئلة

Everything in our world is either natural or man-made. Natural things are things we can find in nature. Natural things from our environment are air, water, soil, heat from the sun, plants and animals. Man-made things are things that people have made. People use wood from trees to make houses. People use sand to make glass. Plastic is made from oils and gases found on Earth.



## Choose the correct answer.

- 1- People use wood from ..... to make houses.  
a) plants      b) trees      c) earth      d) leather
- 2- The underlined word "Man-made things" means .....  
a) unnatural      b) natural      c) pure      d) true

## Answer the following questions.

3- What are natural things?

4- What do people use to make glass?

## Reorder the words to make sentences.

تبديل الكلمات

- 1- his - puts - on - My - uncle - leather - shoes .
- 2- natural - and - sand - Water - resources - are .
- 3- Nour - resources, - are - What - man-made ?
- 4- banks - the fertile - on - live - I - the Nile - of .

## Punctuate the following.

he is packing his sweater

Where do you live gamal .

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Man-made resources"

(by humans - plastic and glass)

## Vocabulary

trip	رحلة قصيرة	a daytrip	رحلة ليوم واحد
tour	جولة	trading center	مركز تجاري
free time	وقت فراغ	mud	طين - وحل
diary entry	مدونة في مذكرة	diary	مفكرة يومية
Jordanian	أردني	the best	الأفضل
capital	عاصمة	bus ride	جولة بالأتوبيس
crafts	مصنوعات يدوية	chance	فرصة
stall	كشك	several	عديد
handicrafts	حرف يدوية	rug	سجادة

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

Present	الحاضر	Past	الماضي	Present	الحاضر	Past	الماضي
check in	يتحقق	checked in	تحقق	explore	يستكشف	explored	استكشف
happen	يحدث	happened	حدث	wander	يتجول	wandered	تجول
carry	يحمل	carried	حمل	land	يهبط	landed	هبط

## Irregular verbs

leave	يفادر	left	غادر	spend	يقضي	spent	قضى
-------	-------	------	------	-------	------	-------	-----

## Places

Zambia	دولة زامبيا	Jordan	دولة الأردن
Amman	دولة عمان	Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الروماني
As-Salt	مدينة السلط	Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر
The Dead Sea	البحر الميت	Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان



## Expressions and prepositions

العبارات وحروف الجر

head out of the city	يخرج من المدينة	float on	يطفو على
on the first day	في اليوم الأول	a piece of	قطعة من
on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	I'll be ready	سأكون جاهز
Shall we go shopping?	هل نذهب للتسوق؟	on the way	في الطريق
arrive in	يصل إلى مكان كبير	write down	يدون
arrive at	يصل إلى مكان صغير		

## Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- I arrived in Amman and checked ..... to my hotel.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) at                      d) from
- We will visit the ..... to discover the history.  
a) market                b) sea                      c) airport                d) museum
- Cairo is the ..... of Egypt.  
a) craft                    b) capital                c) tour                    d) trip

## Reading: Desert tours trip to Jordan

- Listen and read.

**Day 1:** Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.



اليوم الأول: نصل إلى عمان وننتقل إلى فندقنا في وسط المدينة. نتمتع ببعض الوقت الحرة في المدينة قبل الاجتماع في مطعم ممفيس لتناول العشاء الأردني التقليدي في المساء.

**Day 2:** Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

**اليوم الثاني:** اليوم نستمتع بحولة في عمان. زيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المدرج الروماني ومتحف الآثار. بعد تناول الغداء في وقت متأخر في مطعم محلي. نقضي فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء في التمشية في العديد من أسواق عمان الملونة.

**Day 3:** Today we head out of the city for a daytrip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

**اليوم الثالث:** اليوم نخرج من المدينة في رحلة ليوم واحد إلى مدينة السلط. على بعد حوالي ساعة من عمان. ستجد في مدينة السلط القديمة الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من المهن والمصنوعات اليدوية لتشتريها. سنزور متحف أبو جابر ونكتشف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجاري مهم في الأردن.

**Day 4:** No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

**اليوم الرابع:** لا تكتمل أي زيارة إلى الأردن بدون زيارة إلى البحر الميت. يوجد الكثير من الملح في هذا البحر بحيث يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضاً الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت. الجيد جداً لبشرتك.

**Day 5:** After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

**اليوم الخامس:** بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة إفطار مريحة. نغادر الساعة 11 صباحاً لنقود لمدة ثلاث ساعات عائدتين إلى عمان. سننوقف في الطريق لتناول الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار في الساعة 5 مساءً.

Read and write T (True) or F (False).

امرأ واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ)

- The markets in As-Salt sell traditional arts and crafts. ☐
- The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin. ☐
- The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan. ☐



## Reading

### Listen and read.

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history - I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

مذكراتي العزيزة.

اليوم كان أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أحب أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ. أذهب دائماً إلى المتحف في البيت. لذلك كان اليوم يوماً خاصاً بالمتحف. لم تكن الرحلة والوصول سهلة جداً. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. لقد استمعنا إلى الموسيقى في الطريق. الوقت مضى بسرعة كبيرة. عندما وصلنا، كان لدينا الفرصة للتجول في الشوارع واشتري العديد من الأشخاص المشغولات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك. اشتريت سجادة جميلة ملونة. كان صالح (مرشدنا السياحي) لطيفاً جداً وأخذها إلى الحافلة من أجلني. لقد كنت سعيدة جداً لأنني لم أحتاج أن أحملها.

### Answer the questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Where did people buy traditional Jordanian handicrafts?

2- How long did it take to reach their destination?

### Tip

A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

اليوميات هي كتاب تدون فيه الأشياء التي تحدث لك كل يوم. أما المدونة فهي قطعة مكتوبة في يومياتك.

## Exercises

### Lesson 3

### Listen and complete.

بعض الاستماع في بطاقة الكتاب

- 1- Hany will go on a ..... to Africa.
- 2- Hany would like to visit .....
- 3- He wants to see ..... and lions.
- 4- Zambia is ..... for walking safari.

### Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1- In As-Salt, the markets   | a - is very good for your skin.         |
| 2- The Dead Sea mud          | b - to Amman.                           |
| 3 - A diary is a book which  | c - are wonderful.                      |
| 4- We arrived at the airport | d - at 6 pm.                            |
| 5 - I'd like to visit        | e - Barcelona.                          |
|                              | f - you write down thoughts and events. |

### Read the text and answer the questions.

We went on a trip to the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum is the oldest archaeological museum in the Middle East. We went there by bus. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through streets. I and my friends bought souvenirs. In the museum, we enjoyed seeing great and enormous collection of artifacts, and mummies.

### Choose the correct answer.

- 1 - They went on a trip to the Egyptian .....
- a) boat                      b) Museum                      c) garden                      d) stall



## Unit 12

2- The underlined word 'wander' means .....

- a) walk      b) sit      c) sell      d) take

**B Answer the following questions.**

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية

3- How did they go to the Egyptian Museum?

4- What did they see at the museum?

**C Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**

رتب الجمل الآتية

1- tour - a - enjoy - We - Amman - in .

2- the - much - is - There - salt - in - Dead Sea .

to - like - would - I - visit - Amman .

you - would - country - What - like - visit - to ?

**D Punctuate the following.**

i would like to visit zambia.

We re arriving at the airport at 3 p.m

**E Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Jordan"**

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "الأردن"

( arts and crafts - the Dead Sea )

(B)

### Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

city center	وسط المدينة	appointment	موعد
surprised	مدهش	midnight	منتصف الليل
warm	دافئ	class	حصة
birthday	عيد ميلاد	lunchtime	وقت الغداء

### Days of the week

أيام الاسبوع

Saturday	السبت	Wednesday	الأربعاء
Sunday	الأحد	Thursday	الخميس
Monday	الاثنين	Friday	الجمعة
Tuesday	الثلاثاء		

### Months of the year

January	يناير	July	يوليو
February	فبراير	August	أغسطس
March	مارس	September	سبتمبر
April	أبريل	October	أكتوبر
May	مايو	November	نوفمبر
June	يونيو	December	ديسمبر

### Seasons of the year

عصول السنة

spring	الربيع	fall	الخريف
summer	الصيف	winter	الشتاء







## Exercises

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (صحيح) أو (خطأ)  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- They went to the park. ☐
- 2- At four o'clock am, they had their breakfast. ☐
- 3- They played volleyball at lunchtime. ☐
- 4- In the afternoon, their mother read a funny story to them. ☐

## 2 Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in.

..... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed .....  
4 o'clock ..... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was  
surprised that it was so warm ..... October. We went to our  
hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that  
evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.  
Amman is a really busy city ..... night. We walked around the  
markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to  
our hotel ..... about midnight.

## 3 Read and choose the correct answer.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1- My birthday is ..... April 4<sup>th</sup>.  
a) off                      b) at                      c) on                      d) in
- 2- I do exercise ..... the evening.  
a) in                      b) on                      c) at                      d) with
- 3- I get up ..... 7 o'clock.  
a) on                      b) at                      c) in                      d) of
- 4- ..... Tuesday, I visit my grandma.  
a) On                      b) At                      c) In                      d) Of

## 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- in - summer - I - went - Alexandria - to .  
.....
- 2- a party - having - am - I - my - on - birthday .  
.....
- 3- landed - flight - I - 4 o'clock - at .  
.....
- 4- next - our - class - start - at 2 pm ?  
.....

## Lesson (A) Al-Azhar park

## Vocabulary

المعربات اللغوية

Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	awesome	رائع
there	هناك	possible	ممكن
bench	مقعد	playground	ملعب

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

المضارع	الماضي	المضارع	الماضي
phone	يتصل تليفونيا	phoned	seem
agree	يوافق	agreed	seemed
			يبدو
		shout	shouted
			يصرخ

## Irregular verbs

think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	came
		come	يأتى

## Expressions and prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

school was over	المدرسة انتهت	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
such a beautiful day	يوم جميل جدًا	a whole group	مجموعة كاملة
sound interesting	يبدو شيقًا	see the show	يشاهد العرض
came running past	أتوا مسرعين أمام	made a picnic	قام بزهة
go on vacation	ينذهب في عطلة	come back	يعود
had a new job	حصل على وظيفة جديدة	a bit low	ليس في مزاج جيد

## Check your vocab

## Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1- I want to Al-Azhar ..... to spend a good time.  
a) pool                      b) park                      c) road                      d) zoo
- 2- My grandma sat on a ..... to enjoy all the beautiful  
plants in the park.  
a) bench                      b) train                      c) plane                      d) picnic



## Reading

### Listen and read.

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too.



كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفًا حارًا. انتهت المدرسة وأراد الذهاب في إجازة. كان ابن عمه شريف بعيدًا على الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا.

His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

عادة ما كانت أسرته تذهب في إجازة مع أسرة شريف. لكن هذا العام لم يكن ذلك ممكنًا - حصل والد سليم على وظيفة جديدة واضطروا إلى البقاء في القاهرة.

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, 'Hey, how are you, Seleem?', 'I'm feeling a bit low - I want to be at the beach,' said Seleem. 'Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!' said Marwan. 'I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park.'

'Hmm,' said Seleem. 'I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!'

اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلاً: 'مرحباً، كيف حالك يا سليم؟' قال سليم: 'أشعر أنني لست في مزاج جيد - أردت أن أذهب إلى الشاطئ.' 'حسناً، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب إليه، لذلك دعنا نجد شيئاً آخر لنفعله!' قال مروان. 'أعلم، لنذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر.' قال سليم: 'هممم، لا أعرفها، لكنها تبدو شيقة!'

Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

وافقت والدة سليم على اصطحابهم إلى الحديقة. لقد قامت بنزهة، لذلك عندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر البارد واستمتعوا بطعامهم. كان يوماً جميلاً جداً، ومروان وسليم لعبوا كرة القدم. فجأة مر رامي ومaged أصدقائهم من المدرسة مسرعين أمامهم.

'Hi Ramy!' shouted Seleem. 'Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!' 'No,' said Ramy. 'My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?' Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

'مرحباً رامي!' صاح سليم. 'لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ اعتقد أنك كنت في الشاطئ!' قال رامي: 'لا، جدتي مريضة لذا أرادت أمي البقاء في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقوا في المنزل ولم يسافروا. هل يمكنك أن تأتي إلى الملعب معنا؟' سال سليم والدته وذهبوا جميعاً معاً إلى الملعب. جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل ما هو جميل من نباتات وطيور في الحديقة.

'I think this is a fantastic place,' said Mom at the end of the afternoon. 'I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show, and have a meal at the restaurant.' Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

قالت أمي في نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: 'أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.' 'استطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضاً الأسبوع المقبل. هيا نعود مع أبي، ونشاهد العرض، وتتناول وجبة في المطعم.' شعر سليم بسعادة شديدة - الآن عرف أن أصدقائه كانوا في المدينة ولديهم حديقة رائعة. يبدو أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعاً!

### Read and circle the correct answer.

1- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?

- a) Friends from school
- b) Sherif, Seleem's cousin

2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?

- a) Because his grandma was ill
- b) Because his dad had a new job.



## Listen and complete.

استمع واكمل.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- Hossam went to ..... with his family.
- 2- Hossam swam in the ..... and built a sandcastle.
- 3- Hossam's father ..... a book at the beach.
- 4- They went to the restaurant ..... the afternoon.

## Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1- We went to the park,    | a- she wanted to go on vacation. |
| 2- The school was over and | b- and sat under a big tree.     |
| 3- We had a wonderful park | c- in our city.                  |
| 4- My brother is excited   | d- at the beach.                 |
| 5- He was ill so           | e- he has a new job.             |
|                            | f- he wanted to stay home.       |

## Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب على الأسئلة

Al-Azhar Park is one of the most beautiful public parks in Egypt. Al-Azhar Park includes more than two million trees and plants. It has an amazing play area for children to give the best chance for all family members to enjoy their vacations. You can enjoy all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. You can sit under the trees on the cool green grass. You can have your meal at the restaurant. It is a fantastic place!

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1- The main idea is .....  
a) Al-Azhar Park      b) plants      c) food      d) games

Al-Azhar Park includes more than two million .....

- a) birds      b) trees      c) cats      d) restaurants

## Answer the following questions.

- 1- What can you do at Al-Azhar Park?
- 2- What does Al-Azhar Park include?

## Rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1- tomorrow - to - go - ..... - Al-Azhar Park .
- 2- football - my - and - ..... - friends - played .
- 3- to - take - agreed - ..... - the beach - to - me .
- 4- you - are - ..... - feeling - low - a bit ?

## Punctuate the following.

i have a meal at the restaurant

Al-Azhar park is a fantastic place

## Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Al-Azhar park "

كتب فقره من 40 كلمة عن حديقة ازمهر

( vacations - trees and plants )



Tip

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

لعمل أصوات (ث، د) اضغط لسانك على الأسنان العلوية - فصوص (ث) هو صوت غير منطوق وهذا يعني أنه ينبغي أن تشعر بهواء على يدك عندما تنطقه. أما مع الصوت (ذ) لا يوجد هواء، ولكن يمكنك أن تشعر بهتزاز في رقبتك.

/θ/

thing	شيء
Thursday	الخميس
think	يفكر
three	ثلاثة
Earth	الأرض
author	مؤلف
bathroom	حمام
south	جنوب
birthday	عيد ميلاد
thousand	ألف
mouth	فم

/ð/

these	هؤلاء
those	أولئك
this	هنا / هذه
with	مع / بـ
mother	أم
father	أب
they	هم
other	آخرون
clothes	ملابس
leather	جلد

Language focus

- Some adjectives have common suffixes such as the suffix (-ous) / (-ive).

- بعض الصفات لها لاحقات شائعة مثل (-ous) / (-ive).

danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير	create	يبدع	creative	مبدع
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور	expense	نفقة	expensive	غالي
poison	سم	poisonous	سام	act	فعل	active	نشط
enormity	ضخامة	enormous	هائل				

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

# Exercises

1 Listen and write the words in the correct category.

يستمع الطالب للكلمات في التسجيل الصحيح يكتب

(they - mouth - leather - father - bathroom - author)

θ	ð
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

يقرأ الطالب النص يجيب على الأسئلة

My mother's birthday is on Thursday April 23. My brother, father and I are going to plane a surprise party for my mother! The three of us hope that the weather will be nice for the birthday party. We are also going to invite some of my mother's friends.

Choose the correct answer from a or b.

- The word "Thursday" has the sound .....  
a) θ b) ð
- The word "father" has the sound .....  
a) θ b) ð
- The word "three" has the sound .....  
a) θ b) ð

3 Complete the words with the suffix "...ous" or "...ive".

أكمل الكلمات باللاحقات (ive / ous).

- My friend is creat.....
- My dress is very expens.....
- The snake is poison.....

1 - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات ووضعهم في الفئة الصحيحة.  
2 - ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.  
3 - ساعد التلميذ في تكملة الكلمات باللاحقات (ive / ous).



## Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

triangle	مثلث	equilateral	متساوي الأضلاع
2D shape	شكل ثنائي الأبعاد	isosceles	متساوي الساقين
side	ضلع	scalene	مختلف الأضلاع
equal	متساوي	right angle	زاوية قائمة
different	مختلف	length	طول

- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

المثلث متساوي الأضلاع له ثلاث أضلاع متساوية.



- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

المثلث قائم الزاوية له زاوية واحدة قياسها 90 درجة.



- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

المثلث متساوي الساقين له ضلعان متساويين في الطول.



- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

المثلث مختلف الأضلاع له ثلاث أضلاع مختلفين في الطول.



## Exercises

Read and match.

1 - An isosceles triangle

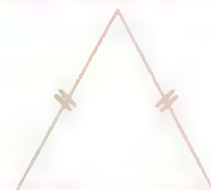
2 - A right angle triangle

3 - A scalene triangle

4 - An equilateral triangle

Read and circle the correct answer.

1 -



• An isosceles triangle

• An equilateral triangle

2 -



• An equilateral triangle

• A right angle triangle

3 -



• An equilateral triangle

• A scalene triangle

Draw an equilateral triangle and an isosceles triangle.



- Help the student to read and match the sentences with the shapes.
- Help the student to read and circle the correct answer.
- Help the student to draw an equilateral and isosceles triangle.

- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل وتوصيلها بالأشكال.
- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ساعد التلميذ في رسم مثلث متساوي الأضلاع ومثلث متساوي الساقين.



## المفردات اللغوية

Dear Diary	مذكرتي العزيزة	The Louvre	متحف اللوفر
sights	مناظر / معالم	paintings	رسومات / لوحات
boat	قارب / مركب	French	فرنسي / اللغة الفرنسية
Morocco	دولة المغرب	smell	رائحة
Paris	باريس	metal	معدن
France	فرنسا	early	مبكر
stall	كشك	chef	طباخ / خدّاح
market	سوق	turtle	سلحفاة
private	خاص	beach buggies	موتوسيكلات نشاطين
bright-colored fish	أسماك زاهية الألوان	formal language	لغة رسمية
The Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل	local dishes	أطباق محلية
sand dunes	كتبان رملية	crowded	مزدحم

## تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

Present	ماضي	Past	Present	ماضي	Past
remind	يذكر	reminded	wander	يعول	wandered
include	يشتمل / يتضمن	included	end	ينتهي	ended
race	ينسابق	raced	understand	يفهم	understood

www.ijerph.com

had such a cool day	قضيت يوم رائع جدًا
made of	مصنوع من
coming from	تخرج من
make me hungry	تجعلني أشعر بالجوع
from the past	من الماضي
go snorkeling	يذهب للغطس
make sandcastles	يصنع قلاع رملية
go on different rides	يذهب في رحلات مختلفة

## Reading

(بیتنامی)

July 21<sup>st</sup>

[illegible]

April 5<sup>th</sup>

إن أبي هذه السيدة، يوجد الكثير جدًا للقيام به. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف، وهو متحف جميل عمره ٨٠ عامًا. ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر، لكنه كان لا يزال مزدحم جدًا بالناس. ربنا أيضًا حديقة ماجوريل، وهي حديقة جميلة. كنت سمعت سرهه أحب المكان هناك لأنه يذكرني قليلاً بحديقة الأزهر في وطني، لكن مكاني المفضل هو جامع هناك في السوق. الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أشعر بالجوع! سأولت ساندوتش بالأمس، لا أستطيع الانتظار للعودة هناك غدًا!



## Answer the questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة

1- Who saw something beautiful made of metal?

2- What makes Amira hungry?

## When you write a diary entry, remember to:

عندما تكتب مدونة في مذكرته يوميه تذكر عمل الآتي:

1- Write the date.

اكتب التاريخ.

2- Start with "Dear Diary".

ابدأ بـ "مذكرتي العزيزة".

3- Describe the places / events.

اوصف الأماكن والأحداث.

4- Say how you felt.

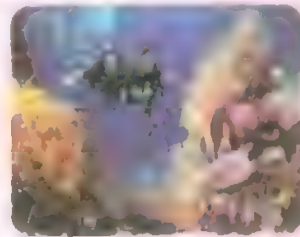
قل ما شعرت به.

## Reading: My perfect vacation

## - Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

**Day 1:** In the morning. We go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.



**اليوم الأول:** في الصباح. نذهب إلى الشاطئ للذهاب للسباحة. نسبح مع السلاحف والأسماك زاهية الألوان. نقتطع على الشاطئ مع زهرة وكتاب جيد.

**Day 2:** Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up?



**اليوم الثاني:** اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية على الشاطئ بموتوسيكلات الشاطئ! إنها ممتعة وسريعة! هل يمكنك مواكبة ذلك؟

**Day 3:** Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.



**اليوم الثالث:** اقض يومًا مريحًا في التسوق والتجول خلال الأسواق. ربما شراء بعض المشغولات اليدوية التقليدية لأخذها إلى المنزل.

**Day 4:** Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.



**اليوم الرابع:** تعلم عن الثقافة الماضية للمدينة برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم في المساء. نذهب إلى مطعم شعبي حيث يمكنك رؤية الطاهي يصنع الأطباق المحلية.

## Answer the questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة

1- Do you want to go on this vacation? Why?

2- What do you do in the morning?

## Exercises

## Listen and complete

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Ali went to .....

2- Ali visited Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful ..... that is 800 years old.

3- Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a .....

4- Moroccans are one of the most ..... and hospitable people.



## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل.

- 1 - We go to the beach
- 2 - We race through the sand dunes
- 3 - I love wandering
- 4 - When writing a diary,
- 5 - The Louvre is a museum

- a - in Giza.
- b - through the market.
- c - you should start with Dear Diary.
- d - in beach buggies.
- e - in Paris.
- f - to go snorkeling.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص و اجب على الاسئلة.

I had a nice day today. I went to Paris. Paris is one of my dream places because of all the exciting things there. We saw the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is one of the main tourist attractions. It's really tall and made of metal. We visited the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings. We were very hungry. We went to the bakery and we had croissants and drank juice.

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 - She went to .....  
a) London      b) Morocco      c) Paris      d) Cairo
- 2 - The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of .....  
a) metal      b) paper      c) plastic      d) gold

## B Answer the following questions.

من الأسئلة التالية.

- 3 - What did they visit in Paris?  
.....
- 4 - What did they do when they were hungry?  
.....

## 1 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

ترتيب الكلمات.

- 1 - beach - buggies - ride - We - through - dunes - the sand .  
.....
- the - wandering - love - I - through - markets .  
.....
- were - people - French - kind - very .  
.....
- go - you - do - When - to - restaurant - the ?  
.....

## 2 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للحمل الآتية.

Do you speak french

i had a wonderful meal yesterday

## 3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your perfect vacation"

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة عن اجازتك المثالية.

- What activities did you do?
- What places did you visit?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Review on unit 12

### Important vocabulary

hotel	فندق	basket	سلة
passport	جواز سفر	reeds	قصب / بوص
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	materials	مواد خام
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	traditional	تقليدي
ticket	تذكرة	capital	عاصمة
tourist	سائح	handicrafts	حرف يدوية
beach	شاطئ	stall	كشك
camera	كاميرا	famous	مشهور
city	مدينة كبيرة	dangerous	خطير
museum	متحف	creative	مبدع
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	expensive	غالي الثمن
theme park	مدينة ملاهي	vacation	عطلة
natural resources	موارد طبيعية	fertile	خصب
man-made resources	موارد صناعية	diary	مذكرة / مفكرة يومية
stone	حجر	Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
plastic	بلاستيك	poisonous	سام
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	enormous	هائل
gold	ذهب	turtle	سلحفاة
sand	رمل	island	جزيرة
galabeya	جلباب	Bay	خليج
leather	جلد	flight	رحلة جوية
bread	خبز	aloud	بصوت عالي
fruit	فاكهة	daughter	ابنة
crops	محاصيل	son	ابن
grain	حبوب	lunchtime	وقت الغداء
high-rising building	منشأ شاهق	daytrip	رحلة يوم واحد
midnight	منتصف الليل		

## Review

### Verbs

#### Regular verbs

English	عربي	Arabic	English	عربي	Arabic
receive	يستلم	received	land	يهبط	landed
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	wander	يتجول	wandered
boil	يغلي	boiled	agree	يوافق	agreed
harvest	يحصد	harvested	end	ينهي	ended
explore	يستكشف	explored	carry	يحمل	carried

#### Irregular verbs

forget	ينسى	forgot	put on	يرتدي	put on
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	come	يأتي	came
leave	يغادر	left	spend	يقضي	spent
shine	تشرق	shone			

### Important language

#### Prepositions of time

- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة مثل:

on Friday - on birthday - on 23<sup>th</sup> March 2014.

- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) قبل الساعة والكلمات lunchtime / night مثل:

at 7 pm - at night - at lunchtime.

- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الشهور والسنوات وفصول السنة وفترات اليوم مثل:

in August - in 2010 - in spring - in the morning - in the afternoon -  
in the evening.



## General Test on unit 12

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- 1- They went to school.
- 2- When they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool grass.
- 3- They played football at 5 o'clock.
- 4- At 4 o'clock, they flew their kites.

## 2 Listen and complete.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- 1- Aya will ..... to Japan.
- 2- They have to find their tickets, ..... and pack their suitcases.
- 3- Aya will ..... her phone.
- 4- Aya always takes her phone so she can take .....

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1- Trees and stone are | a- a beautiful museum.      |
| 2- The Dead Sea mud is | b- Amman.                   |
| 3- We enjoy a tour of  | c- in 1962.                 |
| 4- Grandpa was born    | d- a wonderful city.        |
| 5- Singapore is        | e- very good for your skin. |
|                        | f- natural resources.       |

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

On Tuesday, I and my family arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 5 o'clock. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city centre. Amman is a really busy city at night. We walked around markets and bought traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel at about midnight.

## 5 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- They arrived in Amman on .....  
a) Friday    b) Tuesday    c) Sunday    d) Saturday
- 2- They went to their hotel and ..... in.  
a) check    b) checked    c) go    d) goes

## 6 Answer the following questions.

- 3- Where did they had their dinner?  
.....
- 4- What did they buy?  
.....

## 7 Reorder the words to make sentences.

- 1- to - go - you - Do - the club - Saturday - on ?
- 2- rug - a - lovely - bought - I - colorful .
- 3- on - going - is - Ahmed - vacation .
- 4- snake - is - That - poisonous - dangerous - and .

## 8 Punctuate the following.

..... is your watch very expensive

..... My mother s birthday is on sunday.

## 9 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your trip to Singapore City"

- What things did you take with you?
- What places did you visit in Singapore City?

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Fiction Reader

## A FANTASTIC FAMILY ADVENTURE

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



By Nicola Gardner

Illustrated by Nathalie Ortega

## Story Characters

شخصيات القصة



Grandpa



Grandma



Dad



Uncle  
Youssef



Mom



Ramy



Malak



## Important vocabulary

yard	فناء	carefully	بعناية / بحرص
newspaper	جريدة	tracks	آثار / مسارات
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	sand cat	نقطه رملية
dinosaur	ديناصور	bones	عظام
archaeologist	مختبر	photograph	صورة
adventure	مغامرة	ibex	وعل جبلي
nature	الطبيعة	disappointed	محبط
trail	مسار / أثر	surface	سطح
mint tea	شاي نعنع	archaeological dig	تقيب أثري
binocular	نظارة	underground	أحت الأرض
rare	نادر	fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
cactus	صبار	map	خريطة
palm tree	نخلة	well done	أحسن
quietly	بهدهوء	planet	كوكب

## Verbs

### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
notice	يلاحظ	noticed		discover	يكتشف	discovered	
call	ينادي	called		learn	يتعلم	learned	
prepare	يجهز	prepared		show	يعرض / يوضح	showed	

### Irregular verbs

go back	يعود	went back	find	يجد	found
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant			

Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

'Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!'

The children run inside to see. Dad says, 'Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village.'

'What is it, Dad?' asks Ramy. 'It looks scary!'

Dad says, 'No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur. A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!'

أبى رامي وملاك يلعبان في الفناء. فجأة ينادي عليهم الأب من المنزل.

'هيا يا بني، هيا يا بنت، اتي واطلع على القصة في الجريدة!'

الاطفال يركضون الى الداخل ليرى. الأب يقول، 'انظروا. لقد وجدوا شئاً مذهلاً قريباً من قرية جدي وجدتي.'

'ما هو يا أبي؟' يسأل رامي. 'يبدو مخيفاً!'

الأب يقول، 'لا يا رامي، ليس مخيفاً على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل ديناصور. مجموعة من علماء الآثار وجدته. وأخوك يوسف هو واحد من هؤلاء علماء الآثار!'





"That's awesome. Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?" "Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!" "Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy. "Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك هذا رائع يا ابي! الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم حقًا . أليس كذلك؟  
يقول الأب "نعم . هذا صحيح يا ملك" .. "عمرها حوالي ٩٨ مليون سنة"  
يقول رامي "واو! لقد حصل العم يوسف على وظيفة ممتعة حقًا . أليس كذلك؟  
يقول الأب "نعم . لديه . وعمله مهم أيضًا . إنه يساعدنا في التعرف على الماضي"

Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner. Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?" Ramy says, "That's a great idea. Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!" Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there. Why don't we walk that together?" "Oh yes please. Mom! I love nature," says Malak.

في وقت لاحق، مرام . لتناول رامي وعائلته العشاء  
يقول الأب . "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك في المرة القادمة التي نذهب فيها إلى منزل الجدة؟"  
يقول رامي . "هذه فكرة رائعة يا ابي . سنكون مغامرة إن نذهب إلى الصحراء" تقول أمي . "هناك درب طبيعي جميل  
هناك . لم لا نسير عليه معًا؟" تقول ملك "اوه نعم من فضلك . يا أمي أنا أحب الطبيعة"





"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren. "I have prepared your favorite things - *feteer* and mint tea! Come inside and eat." "Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you." "It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail." "Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

في اليوم التالي، جدهم وجدتهم يناديان: "رامى! ملوك!" وهما متحمسان جداً لرايتهم. "أنا قد أعددت الأشياء المفضلة لكم - *feteer* و الشاي النعنع! اخلو داخلوا واكلوا." "مرحباً،" يقول جدهم لماما وپاپا. "من الجيد جداً اني اراكم." "من الممتع اني اكون هنا،" يقول دادي. "غداً نريد ان نأخذ اطفالنا في رحلة في الطبيعة." "ممتاز،" يقول جدهم. "هناك الكثير من الأشياء الجميلة في منطقتنا. إنها مكانة رائعة."



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare animals.

في اليوم التالي، الجميع سعيد. هم مستعدون للسير في درب الطبيعة. يرتدون القبعات والأوشحة. لديهم وجبات خفيفة ومياه في حقائبهم. أمي لديها بعض المناظير أيضاً. هي تريد ان تراقب الطيور الرائعة التي تعيش هنا. هم في جزء جميل من مصر مع العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels. Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat." The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

إنه يوم جميل ودافئ ، وليس حارًا جدًا . إنه يوم مثالي للتمشية . هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل وهم يرون الأغنام وبعض الجمال . تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات . ملك تقول "أرجوكم جميعاً أن تمشوا بهدوء وبحرص " . إذا كنا هادئين ، فيمكننا رؤية ثعلب الفنك ، أو غزال دوركاس ، أو ربما القط الرمل . تستمتع العائلة على طول الطريق . يرى رامي آثار الحيوانات في الرمال . أبي يلتقط صورة لثعلب الفنك . ترى أمي العديد من الطيور الجميلة . الجميع يستمتع بالدرب .



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?" She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them. "Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks. Dad?" "I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones ...". "We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!" Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?" "Yes, of course," says Dad. Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

ثم قالت الأم ، "أنتم جميعاً ، لدي شيء في حذائي . هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟" هي تجلس . يشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون . ينظر رامي إلى الصخور القريبة من الطريق . يرى بداخلها بعض الأشكال الغريبة . هو يقول "أنظروا!" ما هذه الأشياء في الصخور يا أبي؟ يقول الأب : "لا أعرف . تبدو مثل العظام ...". تقول أمي "نحن قريبون جداً من المكان الذي عثروا فيه على الهيكل العظمي للديناصور .." ربما تكون عظام ديناصور! رامي متحمس جداً يقول "لنسأل العم يوسف!" . يا أبي . هل يمكننا الاتصال به؟ يقول الأب نعم بالطبع . العم يوسف مهتم جداً بالصخور التي وجدها رامي . يخبر أبي أن يلتقط بعض الصور لهم ويقابله في منزل الحدة لتناول العشاء





هذه هي الطريقة التي يجب أن تكون عليها. (هذا هو النوع الذي يجب أن تكون عليه.)



في اليوم التالي يعودون على طول الطريق. يجدون صخور رامي ويظهر إليها العم يوسف بعناية. يقول العم يوسف إنها ليست عظام ديناصور في الصخور. لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. ربما تكون من نوع من الوعل القديم الذي لم يبق منه شيء. (العم يوسف من الناحية العلمية لا يهتم بالعثور على ديناصور).  
في العنود عليها! من المهم أن نأخذ وقتًا في النظر إلى العالم من حولنا ومشاهدة الأشياء - تمامًا مثل عالم الآثار الآن. هل نرعبون جميعًا في القوم للتقريب ورؤية الهيكل العظمي للديناصورات؟ يقول "نعم من فضلك عمي"





'Here he is,' says Uncle Youssef. 'What do you think?'  
 'Wow!' says Ramy. 'It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago.'  
 'And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time,' says Malak. 'In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change,' says Uncle Youssef. 'Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet.'

'ها هو' . يقول العم يوسف . 'ما رأيكم؟'

يقول رامى 'رائع' . إنه لأمر مدهش أن اعتقد أنه عاش منذ ملايين السنين .

تقول ملك 'وأن عظامها كانت تحت الأرض لفترة طويلة جداً' . يقول العم يوسف 'في الواقع ، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ' . 'الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل . وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تهب الرمال . الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تخرج إلى سطح الأرض . هذا جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه سيء للكوكب' .



Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

'Thanks for showing us the dinosaur. Uncle Youssef,' says Ramy. 'It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!' 'It's fascinating work, but it's hard,' says Uncle Youssef. 'Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything.' 'We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!' says Malak. 'Thanks for all the delicious food,' says Mom. 'It was lovely to see you both again.' 'Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon.' says Grandma.

في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى البيت . يقول رامى 'شكراً لعرض الديناصور لنا . يا عم يوسف' . 'كان الأمر ممتعاً جداً . أود أن أكون عالم آثار يا له من عمل رائع جداً' .

يقول العم يوسف : 'إنه عمل رائع ، لكنه صعب . أحياناً نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئاً' . تقول ملك 'يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى' . تقول الأم 'شكراً على كل الطعام اللذيذ' . 'كان من الرائع أن أراكما كلاكما مرة أخرى' . تقول الحدة 'شكراً لك عزيزتي تعال و يوريا قريباً'





"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.  
 "Yes, I thought it was fantastic," says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.  
 "What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.  
 Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment." "Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things," adds Malak. "You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

إذن ، هل استمتعت برحلتنا؟ ، تسال الأم في السيارة

نعم ، نعم ، أجاب رامي ، "أنا أيضا أحببت ذلك" ، تقول بنت رامي

يسال الأب : ماذا تعلمتوا انكم تعلمتم منها؟

أجاب رامي : تعلمت ان من المهم ان نلاحظ الأشياء ونلاحظها في كل وقت ، نعم ، نعم ، أجاب رامي

نصحت بنت رامي : نعم ، نعم ، أجاب رامي ، نعم ، نعم ، أجاب رامي ، نعم ، نعم ، أجاب رامي



## Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- ..... were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

- a) Cats      b) Dinosaurs      c) Bats      d) Birds

2- Archaeologists help us learn about the .....

- a) past      b) future      c) present      d) music

3- It would be a/an ..... to go into the desert!

- a) fun      b) adventure      c) nature      d) easy

4- Ramy sees animals' ..... in the sand.

- a) body      b) ears      c) tracks      d) arms

5- "We can help you if you're looking ..... other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

- a) after      b) in      c) for      d) on

2 Complete the sentences from the words in the box.

أكمل العبارات التالية مستعيناً بالكلمات بين القوسين

(ibex – skeleton – rare – photographs – trail)

1- A/An ..... is a type of desert animals like a gazelle.

2- It's the ..... of a dinosaur.

3- They are ready to walk the nature .....

4- They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of ..... animals.

5- Uncle Youssef tells Dad to take some ..... of them.



## Read and match (A) with (B).

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1- Dad reads a story           | a- to look at things in the distance with them. |
| 2- Mom has some binoculars     | b- live near the archeological dig.             |
| 3- Uncle Youssef is an         | c- in some rocks near the trail.                |
| 4- The children's grandparents | d- about dinosaur in the newspaper.             |
| 5- Ramy finds old bones        | e- to dig.                                      |
|                                | f- archaeologist.                               |

## Read the text and answer the questions.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now." Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"

## Answer the following questions.

- What does Ramy find?  
.....
- What does Uncle Youssef do?  
.....
- What does Uncle Youssef invite them?  
.....
- Is it important to take time to look at the world around us?  
.....

## Read the sentences and write T (True) or F (False).

اقرأ الجمل واكتب صح أو خطأ.

- They go to Uncle Youssef's office. ☐
- They are ready to walk the nature trail. ☐
- Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ☐
- Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago. ☐
- Uncle Youssef is a vet. ☐

## Read and number the pictures.

اقرأ و رقم الصور.

- Dad suggests to the family that they visit Grandma's house
- The family go on a nature trail and see lots of beautiful animals and birds
- Ramy sees some bones and he thinks they are dinosaur bones.
- Uncle Youssef invited them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of fun.





# Listening texts

## Unit seven

page (10)

### - Listen and complete:

**Dalia** : Where were you yesterday?

**Rania** : I was at my aunt's apartment. She moved to a new apartment.

**Dalia** : Why?

**Rania** : Because this apartment has big kitchen which is much bigger to cook in.

**Dalia** : Wow! What else?

**Rania** : There are 4 bedrooms, and there is a great view from the balcony.

**Dalia** : That's nice!

page (18)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Ali. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. On the right, there is my brother's bed next to a big closet. On the left, there's my bed.

In the middle of the room, there is a desk and two armchairs with two cushions. On the wall, there are lots of posters of famous footballers.

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

In Ancient Egypt, boats were the best transportation on the Nile. They were used for traveling and trading. They were made of wood. Most Egyptians had boats.

page (23)

### - Listen and complete:

**Ahmed** : What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes were like?

**Hossam** : It was very amazing. They used mud bricks to keep their homes cool.

**Ahmed** : Wow! What else?

**Hossam** : They painted their homes white to make them cooler.

**Ahmed** : How did they sleep?

**Hossam** : There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.

**Ahmed** : That was amazing!

page (33)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Near a pretty village in the Italian countryside, there is a house with an unusual garden. This garden has a very big space with different and beautiful plants inside, there is a big house with six bedrooms, three bathrooms, and 2 kitchens.

### - Listen and complete:

**Salwa** : What are you doing, Ola?

**Ola** : I'm writing a blog about unusual homes. I found a strange house in South Africa.

**Salwa** : What does it look like?

**Ola** : It looks like a shoe. It has everything like a normal house.

**Salwa** : That's awesome!

page (36)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

There is a beautiful house in the south of England. It looks like a nest of a bird. It has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, and a large kitchen. There is a garden outside with beautiful plants. It's an amazing place to live in!

### - Listen and complete:

Hi, I'm Nada. I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there's my sister's bed. On the left, there is my bed with a closet next to it. In the middle of the room, there are two armchairs. On the wall, there are lots of posters of fashion designers.

## Unit eight

page (45)

### - Listen and complete:

Yesterday, Ashraf was at school. A lot of his friends didn't come. Youssef hurt his ankle at football practice. His friend Nour is sick. She has a backache. Ashraf is worried about his friends.

page (54)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, My name is Salah. Last Tuesday, I went to the zoo with my cousin Hassan. He is a blind man. At the zoo, he wanted to know the shape of the parrot. He touched it. He found that it has a lot of feathers. He thought that it has a long beak, but when he touched its face, he found that it has a short beak.

### - Listen and complete:

**Ahmed** : Where were you yesterday?

**Nour** : I was at the zoo.

**Ahmed** : Who came with you?

**Nour** : My family.

**Ahmed** : What did you see there?

**Nour** : I saw a giraffe.

**Ahmed** : What does it look like?

**Nour** : The giraffe is the tallest animal. Its legs and neck are very long. The giraffe has a tall. Its coat is light brown.

page (59)

### - Listen and complete:

**Doctor** : Come in, Dina. What's the matter?

**Dina** : I fell off my bike.

**Doctor** : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

**Dina** : Here. I have a cut on my leg.

**Doctor** : Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

**Dina** : Thank you, Doctor.

page (64)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Marwan. Last week, my father was very sick. I and my mother went with him to the

hospital. The hospital is near our house. In the hospital, there were many patients. The hospital was very busy. The staff of the hospital looked after my father. Now, he feels better.

### - Listen and complete:

**Mohamed** : Why didn't you go to the club yesterday?

**Hager** : Because I had a cold.

**Mohamed** : Oh, dear! Did you go to the doctor?

**Hager** : Yes, I did. He gave me some medicine.

**Mohamed** : You should stay home.

**Hager** : Okay thank you.

page (69)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Yesterday, we were sick at home. I had a sore throat. My father made me honey and lemon. My brother had a headache. My father gave him some pills. My little sister fell over her bike. She had a cut knee, so I put a bandage on the cut.

### - Listen and complete:

**Mazen** : Can I ask you a few questions?

**Doctor** : Yes, of course.

**Mazen** : What can I do to protect my skin from a sunburn?

**Doctor** : You can use a sunscreen.

**Mazen** : What can I do when I have a sore throat?

**Doctor** : You can mix honey with lemon and drink it.

**Mazen** : Thank you very much.

**Doctor** : You're welcome.

page (77)

### - Listen and complete:

**Asil** : Hi, Mona! How are you?

**Mona** : I'm fine thank you.

**Asil** : What do you do to stay healthy?

**Mona** : I play sports and get enough sleep every night.

**Mona** : What about you?

**Asil** : I drink plenty of water and eat vegetables.

**Mona** : Do you spend time with your friends?

**Asil** : Yes. Of course.



## Listening texts

page (80)

### - Listen and complete:

Yesterday was an interesting day. I went to the zoo with my family. A zoo is a place where you can see many birds and animals. We saw the giraffe. It's the tallest animal in the zoo. We saw the elephant. It's very strong and its trunk is long and flexible like a snake. We also saw the lion. It has a big head, strong claws and sharp teeth.

### - Listen and complete:

**Sara** : Hi, Mai. Why didn't you go to school yesterday?  
**Mai** : Because I had a toothache.  
**Sara** : Oh, dear. Did you go to the dentist?  
**Mai** : Yes, I did.  
**Sara** : Who went with you?  
**Mai** : My mother.  
**Sara** : I hope you are better now.

## Unit nine

page (89)

### - Listen and complete:

**Laila** : Hi, Joudy. Where did you go yesterday?  
**Joudy** : I went to the zoo with my family.  
**Laila** : What did you see there? Could you go near the parrots?  
**Joudy** : Yes, I could see them. They have wonderful mixed colors.  
**Laila** : Could they talk?  
**Joudy** : Yes, they could talk. We said some words for them to repeat.  
**Joudy** : That's interesting!

page (93/94)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Yahia. When I was young, I could do many things. When I was eight, I could use a computer, and everyone was amazed. I could also play the piano when I was ten. When I was fifteen, I could play chess with my uncle and won many prizes.

### - Listen and complete:

**Samir** : Hi, Kareem. What are you doing?  
**Kareem** : I'm doing a school project on bats.  
**Samir** : What can they do?  
**Kareem** : They can fly very fast.  
**Samir** : Where can they sleep?  
**Kareem** : They can sleep upside down on trees.  
**Samir** : When do they usually fly?  
**Kareem** : They fly at night.

page (103)

### - Listen and complete:

Ancient Egyptian society was so organized. Everyone did his job well. There were soldiers who were busy keeping Egypt safe. There were nobles who helped the pharaoh. There were scribes who were the only people who could read and write.

page (106)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Jana. When I was 15, I could read short stories. I was very interested in comic stories. But my brother was different. When my brother, Ahmed was 16, he could play football. He was so interested in watching strange goals.

### - Listen and complete:

**Manar** : What did you do?  
**Mariam** : I watched a movie about a great traveler.  
**Manar** : Wow! What did he do?  
**Mariam** : He traveled to many amazing places around the world.  
**Manar** : Was he brave?  
**Mariam** : Yes, he was a great climber. He climbs many mountains.  
**Manar** : It's very interesting.

page (112)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

The Blob fish is an unusual animal. It's from Australia. It lives in the ocean. The Blob fish doesn't really swim. It floats. I am surprised.

### - Listen and complete:

**Samir** : What's your favorite unusual animal?

**Aya** : My favorite unusual animal is dugong.  
**Samir** : What does it look like?  
**Aya** : It's got a lovely friendly face.  
**Samir** : What's its nickname?  
**Aya** : The sea cow.  
**Samir** : What does it eat?  
**Aya** : It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed.

page (116)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Mohamed. I read about Ancient Egyptian society. Scribes were very important in the society. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters and records.

### - Listen and complete:

**Asmaa** : Where did you go yesterday, Ola?  
**Ola** : I went to the new wildpark.  
**Asmaa** : What did you see there?  
**Ola** : I saw penguins.  
**Asmaa** : Where were they?  
**Ola** : There were in a special place inside like a fridge.  
**Asmaa** : Did you feed them?  
**Ola** : Yes, we feed them some fish.

## Review 3

page (121)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

**Mai** : What can you see?  
**Mona** : I can see Dorcas gazelle.  
**Mai** : Is it endangered?  
**Mona** : Yes. Because people hunt them for their meat and skin.  
**Mai** : Where does it live?  
**Mona** : In The Sahara and Negev deserts.

## Unit ten

page (130)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Alexandria is a wonderful place to visit and live in it. There's a lot to see and do in Alexandria. Alexandria has a very good weather. People in Alexandria are so nice and friendly. There are big fantastic hotels which are overlooking the sea. In Alexandria, you can visit the Alexandria Library, Qaitbay Fort and go to the beach.

### - Listen and complete:

**Ahmed** : Where were you yesterday?  
**Dalia** : I was in Alexandria.  
**Ahmed** : Wonderful! What did you see there?  
**Dalia** : I saw lots of amazing restaurants, stores and museums.  
**Ahmed** : Did you go to the beach?  
**Dalia** : Yes, I did. I also swam in the sea.

page (135)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Aser. I'm doing a research on the life in Ancient Egypt. They had a special type of writing, that called Hieroglyphics. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From Hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

### - Listen and complete:

**Tourist** : What is it?  
**Guide** : It's a monument.  
**Tourist** : Who made this?  
**Guide** : The Ancient Egyptians.  
**Tourist** : Why did the Ancient Egyptians make it?  
**Guide** : To celebrate important people.  
**Tourist** : Okay. It's really huge and great.



## Listening texts

page (141)

### - Listen and complete:

- Doaa** : What's the weather like today, Mom?  
**Mom** : It's very cold. Wear your jacket, please.  
**Doaa** : Okay, Mom. I'll wear it.  
**Mom** : It's going to rain. Don't forget your umbrella.  
**Doaa** : Okay Mom.  
**Mom** : Will you take your bag?  
**Doaa** : Yes. Of course.

page (155)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

London is one of the most beautiful cities in the world. This city is full of sights and nice places. You can see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. London has a number of parks which are amazing.

### - Listen and complete:

- Mai** : Where did you go last weekend?  
**Paulo** : I went to Cairo.  
**Mai** : Oh, it's perfect. What did you see there?  
**Paulo** : I saw the Nile River, the Pyramids of Giza and the Egyptian Museum.  
**Mai** : Did you go to Khan EL-Khalili?  
**Paulo** : Yes, I did. I found many markets, restaurants and cafés.

page (159/160)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Amr. I live in Alexandria. I love it. I work in a restaurant. I love going to the beach with my family. My favourite place is the Alexandria Library. Alexandria has very good weather, nice people and a lot of places to visit.

### - Listen and complete:

**Ashraf**: Where Were you last weekend?

**Rania**: I was in New Alamein .

**Ashraf**: Where is it?

**Rania**: It's on the beach.

**Ashraf**: What can you see in this city?

**Rania**: I can see a large green lake and the Archaeological Center.

**Ashraf**: Is there any parks in New Alamein?

**Rania**: Yes, there is a beautiful International park.

## Unit eleven

page (168)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, my name is Hossam. Today, I called my friend Adel. We decided to go to the Blue Lagoon because we can swim and dive. We did some online researches on this place and we knew that there are many rocks in the sea, so we should be careful while swimming.

### - Listen and complete:

Hi, my name is Hala. I love my friend Jana. She is a nice person. We can play computer games well. We can sing some songs nicely. We are so happy to be close friends.

page (173)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Eman. I'm going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I am packing my suitcase. I get thirsty when I hike, so I always take lots of water bottles. I sometimes feel hungry, so I take some snacks. I also use a map to help me when I hike.

page (177)

### - Listen and complete:

Last Monday, I went to the zoo. I could see beautiful parrots. I could feed the turtle which was walking so slowly. I could play with a white rabbit which was standing quietly.

page (185)

### - Listen and complete:

Omar and Waleed are good friends. They want to have lunch at a restaurant. They decided to go to the restaurant on Friday. They like eating meat and drinking milkshake.

page (188/189)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I and my family decided to go on a hiking vacation. A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is Nuweiba Trail. It's in the eastern part of Sinai. You can see the famous colored canyon there. That's a wonderful place.

### - Listen and complete:

We went to the zoo yesterday. I saw many wonderful animals. The tortoise walked slowly across the grass. I could see beautiful birds singing. I could see a grey elephant standing quietly and eating the grass.

## Unit Twelve

page (196)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I read a book about the most exciting cities in the world. Singapore is one of them. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks and gardens. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. There is a theme park. You can also visit the museum of ice cream!

### - Listen and complete:

**Marwa** : Where will your next trip be?

**Pilot** : To Singapore City.

**Marwa** : Where is it?

**Pilot** : It's a wonderful city in Asia.

**Marwa** : What can I do in Singapore City?

**Pilot** : You can go to the Gardens by the Bay. You can go on a boat trip to an island. There is a theme park. You can visit the museum of ice cream.

page (201)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Natural resources are created naturally on Earth such as wood, rocks, clay and minerals. Water, wind and air are also natural resources found on Earth. Animals create natural resources such as eggs and milk.

### - Listen and complete:

**Fady** : What do your father do?

**Mai** : He is a farmer.

**Fady** : What does he grow?

**Mai** : He grows tomatoes, onions and mangoes.

**Fady** : What does he do every day?

**Mai** : He waters the crops and also harvests the grain. Then he puts them it into baskets made from reeds and takes it to sell at the market.

page (207)

### - Listen and complete:

**Ahmed** : Where will you go on vacation?

**Hany** : I'll go on a trip to Africa.

**Ahmed** : Which country would you like to visit?

**Hany** : I would like to visit Zambia.

**Ahmed** : Why would you like to visit Zambia?

**Hany** : Because, I want to see elephants and lions.

**Ahmed** : What is Zambia famous for?

**Hany** : It's famous for walking safari.

page (212)

### - Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

On Friday. I and my family went to the park. At 8 o'clock am we had our breakfast. I and my sister went to see the flowers and enjoyed the fresh air. We played volleyball at lunchtime. It was fun. At four o'clock pm, we rode bikes but my little brother liked to fly his kite. In the evening, my mother read a funny story to us.



## Listening texts

page (216)

- Listen and complete:

Ali : Where did you go on vacation?

Hossam: I went to Alexandria with my family.  
We went to the beach.

Ali : What activities did you do at the beach?

Hossam: I swam in the sea and built a  
sandcastle. My brother flew his kite.  
My father read a book. We all played  
volleyball.

Ali: What did you do in the afternoon?

Hossam: We went to eat fish at a restaurant.

page (225)

- Listen and complete:

My name is Ali. Last weekend, we went to  
Morocco. We visited Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa,  
a beautiful museum that is 800 years old. We  
also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden  
where we had a picnic. Moroccans are one of  
the most friendly and hospitable people. They  
love to welcome their visitors with a lovely  
smile with a cup of mint tea.

page (230)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Last Friday, I went with my friends to Al-Azhar  
Park. We made a picnic, so when we arrived,  
we sat under a big tree on the cool green grass  
and enjoyed our food. At 2 o'clock pm, we  
played football in the playground. At 4 o'clock  
we flew our kites. When we were hungry, we  
went to the restaurant to have our meal. It was  
a beautiful day.

- Listen and complete:

Shimaa : What will you do on vacation?

Aya : We will fly to Japan.

Shimaa : What things will you take?

Aya : We have to find our tickets, passports  
and pack our suitcases.

Shimaa : Will you take your phone?

Aya : Yes, I will. I always take my phone so I  
can take photos.

تابع صفحتنا على الفيس بوك  قطر الندى  
حتى لا تفوتك فرصة الاشتراك في

مسابقة سحب

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

هدايا قطر الندى القيمة

كوبون  
السحب

اسم التلميذ :

العنوان :

رقم الهاتف :